

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku

COBHAM

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power

Installation and operation manual



SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku

Quick guide

Configuration tasks (minimum)

This quick guide aims at experienced service personnel who have installed the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku or the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power system and connected power. It lists the minimum configuration tasks you have to make before the system can be used on-air on a satellite.

1. Connect a PC to the front LAN connector or the LAN3 connector at the rear of the Antenna Control Unit.
2. On the ACU keypad, push and hold the left arrow key for 5 seconds and wait for the very short display of **Local administration**, followed by the event text: **0807F-0 WARNING Local administration enable**. This gives you temporary administrator access for 1 hour or until next restart.
3. Open an Internet Browser and type the default IP address of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku: <http://192.168.0.1> to access the web interface.

Configuration task	What to do and where to find more information
Heading input	Configure the heading mode to External under SETTINGS > Navigation . For more information see Table 6-1 on page 6-5. Connect the ship's heading (RS-422, NMEA0183) to the NMEA 0183 multi-connector. Pin 8 Ship Ground/Shield (connect only one end), Pin 9 Line B +, and Pin 10 Line A-. For more information see <i>NMEA 0183 connector</i> on page 4-3.
Azimuth calibration	Make an azimuth calibration under SERVICE > Calibration to ensure that the SAILOR VSAT can point and receive satellite signal. For more information see <i>Azimuth calibration</i> on page 6-8.
TX cable calibration	Make a Tx cable calibration under SERVICE > Calibration to ensure that Tx power is calibrated at all frequencies. For more information see <i>Cable calibration</i> on page 6-13. See Appendix E or http://www.lyngsat.com for DVB-S transponder information.
Modem connection	Connect cables between the modem and the ACU. For more information see <i>VSAT modem settings</i> on page D-1.
Modem profile	Configure the modem profile under SETTINGS > Modem profiles . For more information see <i>Modem profiles</i> on page 6-26
Network settings	Configure the network settings under SETTINGS > Network if the modem communicates with IP to the ACU. For more information see <i>To configure the LAN network</i> on page 6-34.
Satellite profile	Configure the satellite profile under SETTINGS > Satellite profiles and then activate the satellite profile and wait for the system to acquire the satellite and start tracking. For more information see <i>Satellite profiles</i> on page 6-29 and <i>Satellite profiles</i> on page 6-29.

You find a flow chart for the calibration procedure on page 6-15.

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power

Installation manual

Document number: 98-138976-H

Release date: 29 April 2020

Disclaimer

Any responsibility or liability for loss or damage in connection with the use of this product and the accompanying documentation is disclaimed by Thrane & Thrane A/S. The information in this manual is provided for information purposes only, is subject to change without notice and may contain errors or inaccuracies. Manuals issued by Thrane & Thrane A/S are periodically revised and updated. Anyone relying on this information should acquire the most current version e.g. from www.cobham.com/satcom, **Cobham SYNC Partner Portal**, or from the distributor. Thrane & Thrane A/S is not responsible for the content or accuracy of any translations or reproductions, in whole or in part, of this manual from any other source. In the event of any discrepancies, the English version shall be the governing text.

Thrane & Thrane A/S is trading as Cobham SATCOM.

Company address

Thrane & Thrane A/S, Lundtoftegaardsvej 93 D, DK-2800, Kgs. Lyngby, Denmark

Copyright

© 2020 Thrane & Thrane A/S. All rights reserved.

Trademark acknowledgements

- Some product and company names mentioned in this manual may be trademarks or trade names of their respective owners.

GPL notification

The software included in this product contains copyrighted software that is licensed under the GPL/LGPL. The verbatim licenses can be found online at:

<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/gpl-2.0.html>

<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html>

You may obtain the complete corresponding source code from us for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product, which will be no earlier than 2021, by sending a money order or check for DKK 50 to:

SW Technology/GPL Compliance,
Cobham SATCOM (Thrane & Thrane A/S),
Lundtoftegaardsvej 93D
2800 Lyngby
DENMARK

Write "source for product SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku" in the memo line of your payment. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information.

<http://www.cobham.com/communications-and-connectivity/satcom/free-and-open-source-software-foss/>

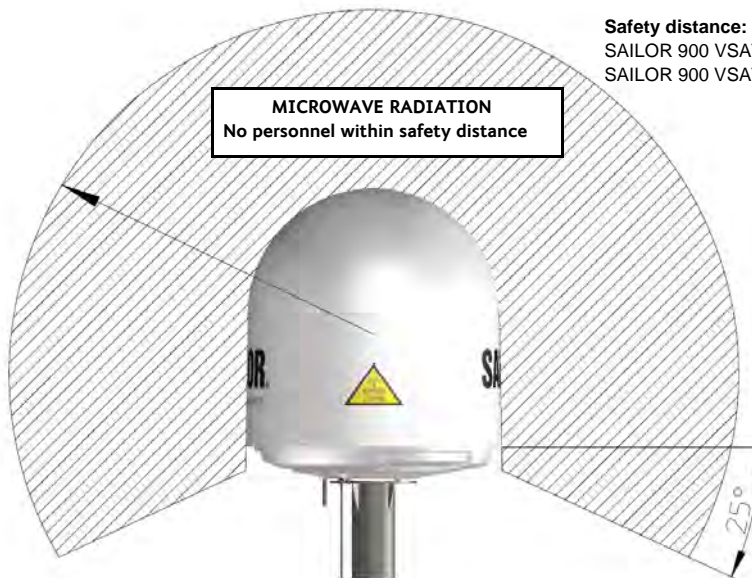
Safety summary

The following general safety precautions must be observed during all phases of operation, service and repair of this equipment. Failure to comply with these precautions or with specific warnings elsewhere in this manual violates safety standards of design, manufacture and intended use of the equipment. Thrane & Thrane A/S assumes no liability for the customer's failure to comply with these requirements.

Microwave radiation hazards

During transmission the Above Deck Unit (antenna) in this system radiates Microwave Power. This radiation may be hazardous to humans close to the Above Deck Unit. During transmission, make sure that nobody gets closer than the recommended minimum safety distance.

The minimum safety distance to the Above Deck Unit reflector on the focal line is 30 m for SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku and 47 m for SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power, based on a radiation level of 10 W/m^2 . No hazard exists $>25^\circ$ below the Above Deck Unit's mounting plane. Refer to the drawing below.



Safety distance:
SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku: 30 m, 10 W/m^2
SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku HP: 47m, 10 W/m^2

No-transmit zones

In order to protect personnel no-transmit zones can be programmed. For further information see *Blocking zones – azimuth and elevation* on page 3-5.

Distance to other equipment

Do not move the Above Deck Unit closer to radars than the minimum safe distance specified in section *Interference from radar, GPS, L-band and other transmitters* on page 3-12 — it may cause damage to the Above Deck Unit.

Compass Safe Distance:

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku antenna or ADU (Above Deck Unit): min. 170 cm (IEC 60945).

SAILOR 7016C Antenna Control Unit: min. 30 cm (IEC 60945).

Service

User access to the interior of the ACU is prohibited. Only a technician authorized by Cobham SATCOM may perform service - failure to comply with this rule will void the warranty. Access to the interior of the Above Deck Unit is allowed. Replacement of certain modules and general service may only be performed by a technician authorized by Cobham SATCOM.

Grounding, cables and connections

To minimize shock hazard and to protect against lightning, the equipment chassis and cabinet must be connected to an electrical ground. The ACU must be grounded to the ship. For further grounding information see the respective sections and appendix in this manual.

Do not extend the cables beyond the lengths specified for the equipment. The cable between the ACU and Above Deck Unit can be extended if it complies with the specified data concerning cable losses etc.

Rx and Tx cables for the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system are shielded and should not be affected by magnetic fields. However, try to avoid running cables parallel to high power and AC/RF wiring as it might cause malfunction of the equipment.

Power supply

SAILOR 7016C Antenna Control Unit: voltage range 100-240 VAC.

The Above Deck Unit is powered by the ACU.

Do not operate in an explosive atmosphere

Do not operate the equipment in the presence of flammable gases or fumes. Operation of any electrical equipment in such an environment constitutes a definite safety hazard.

Keep away from live circuits

Operating personnel must not remove equipment covers. Component replacement and internal adjustment must be made by qualified maintenance personnel. Do not replace components with the power cable connected. Under certain conditions, dangerous voltages may exist even with the power cable removed. To avoid injuries, always disconnect power and discharge circuits before touching them.

Failure to comply with the rules above will void the warranty!



CAUTION! Do not manually turn the Polarisation Unit of the antenna, it may cause damage to the antenna.

If needed to turn the Polarisation Unit manually, remove the connector marked M of the Polarisation Motor Module.



VSAT restrictions

Note

There are restrictions in use of the frequency band 13.75 to 14 GHz in the following countries. Other countries may have restrictions, consult your airtime provider or relevant authorities for information.

- Belgium
- Hungary
- Latvia
- Malta
- Portugal
- Slovakia

Contact the VSAT modem provider for local setup.

Modification restrictions

This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law (電波法).

This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Record of Revisions

Rev.	Description	Release Date	Initials
A	Original document	23 April 2013	UFO
B	The following sections have been edited: 2.1.1, 3.2.6, 3.3, A.1.2. The following section has been added: H.3	02 May 2013	UFO
C	The following sections have been added: 8.6.4, 8.6.5, C.1, C.4, H4, H.5 The following sections have been edited: 1.3, 2.1, 3.3.1, 3.3.4, 4.1.7, 4.2, 6.2, 6.3.1, 6.5, C.2.1, C.3.1, G.2, G.3 The following figures have been added: 6-42, 6-5, 6-6, 6-7 The following figures have been edited: 6-4, 6-6, 6-14, The following tables have been added: 6-2, 6-3 The following tables have been edited: 4-4, 6-12, A-2, A-3, C-1,	20 February 2014	UFO
D	The following sections have been added: 3.1.4, C.8.3, C.8.6, C.9, H6 The following sections have been edited: 1.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.1, 3.6, 6.1.1, 6.2, 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.3.6, 6.3.10, 6.4.1, 6.4.5, 8.1.1, 8.2.2, B.2, C.2.2, C.6.1, C.7.1 The following figures have been edited: 2-4, 3-26, 6-2, 6-39 (all screens updated to software 1.54) The following tables have been added: 6-13, C-8 The following tables have been edited: 4-6, A-4, E-1, G-1, G-2	6 June 2016	UFO
E	The following sections have been added: 4.1.2 The following sections have been edited: p. iv, 2.1, 3.1.1, 3.4.2, 4.1.1, H.2 The following figures have been added: 2-5, 3-26, 4-3, 8-3, A-2, A-3, C-2, C-9, C-10, C15, C-19, C-23, C-27, C-28, C-35 The following figures have been edited: 3-24, A-3, 8-6 The following tables have been added: The following tables have been edited: 2-1, A-3, G-1, G-2	6 February 2017	UFO

F	<p>The following sections have been added: 3.3.1, 3.3.2, 8.3, H.5</p> <p>The following sections have been edited: Quick Guide (front), p. ii, iv, v, sections 1.3, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 3.1.1, 3.1.3, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.6, 3.2.8, 3.3.3, 3.3.4, 3.3.5, 3.3.6, 3.4.1, 3.6, 4.1.1, 4.1.5, 5.1, 6.1.2, 6.2.4, 6.2.7, 6.2.8, 6.3.2, 6.3.5, 6.3.6, 6.3.7, 6.3.9, 6.4.1, 6.4.3, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 8.1.1, 8.2.2, A.1.1, A.1.2, A.1.3, C.2.1, C.3.1, C.4.1, C.5.1, C.6.1, C.7.1, C.9.1, D.1.1, G.2, G.3, H.1, H.2, H3, H4,</p> <p>The following sections have been deleted (old numbers): 4.1.3, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, A.2.3</p> <p>The following figures have been added: 8-9</p> <p>The following figures have been edited: 2-1, 2-2, 3-9, 3-11, 3-14, 3-15, 3-16, 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-24, 6-2, 6-7, 6-8, 6-9, 6-11, 6-12, 6-13, 6-14, 6-15, 6-16, 6-17, 6-18, 6-21, 6-24, 6-25, 6-26, 6-29, 6-30, 6-31, 6-32, 6-33, 6-35, 6-36, 6-37, 6-38, 6-39, 6-40, 6-41, 6-42, 6-43, 6-44, 8-1, 8-2, 8-3, 8-8, 8-11, A-1, C-5, C-10, C-13, C-16, C-18, C-19, C-23, C-25, C-28, C-29</p> <p>The following figures have been deleted (old numbers): 2-7, 3-20, 3-27, 4-4, 4-5, 5-1, 5-2, 8-4, 8-5, A-4, A-5, C-3, C-4, C-11, C-12, C-16, C-20, C-24, C-29, C-30, C-36</p> <p>The following tables have been added:</p> <p>The following tables have been edited: 2-1, 2-2, 6-19, 6-20, 6-21, 6-22, 7-1, 7-2, 7-3, A-1, A-2, A-3, A-7, A-10, D-9, D-10, D-11, G-1, G-2</p> <p>The following tables have been deleted: 4-2</p>	13 August 2018	CC
---	--	----------------	----

G	<p>The manual now includes the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power variant (previously described in 98-150471)</p> <p>The following sections have been added: A.5, Appendix B, D.6, I.6, I.9</p> <p>The following sections have been edited: Cover, Safety summary p. iii, 1.1, 1.3, 2.1, 2.2, 3.1.1, 3.1.3, 3.2.4, 3.2.6, 3.2.7, 3.3.3, 3.3.6, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 4.1.5, 6.2.8, 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.3.3, 6.3.6, 6.3.8, 7.3, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 8.6, 8.8, A.1.1, A.1.2, A.5, D.4.1, E.2.5, E.2.9, Appendix F, I.1, I.2, I.5</p> <p>The following sections have been deleted (old numbers): 3.6, 6.3.7, A.1.2, A.1.3, A.1.4, H.6, H.7</p> <p>The following figures have been added: 2-4, 2-6, 6-14, 6-25, 8-12, 8-14, B-1 to B-11</p> <p>The following figures have been edited: 2-8, 3-4, 3-21, 3-22, 4-1, 6-1, 6-2, 6-16, 6-19, 6-21, 6-22, 8-2, 8-4, 8-7, 8-9</p> <p>The following figures have been deleted (old numbers): 3-24, 3-25, 6-29 to 6-36, 8-4</p> <p>The following tables have been added: 6-16, A-8, A-9, A-10, B-1</p> <p>The following tables have been edited: 2-1, 2-2, 3-7, 6-10, 6-11, 6-13, 6-14, 6-15, 7-3, A-1, A-2, A5, E-6, E-10, F-1, H-2</p> <p>The following tables have been deleted (old numbers): 3-8, A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4</p>	December 2018	CC
H	<p>The following sections have been added: D.11, App. F</p> <p>The following sections have been edited: 1.2, 1.3, 2.1, 3.1.1, 6.2.8, A.1, B.2.1, J.2</p> <p>The following tables have been edited: 2-1</p>	29 April 2020	UFO

Table of Contents

Chapter 1	About this manual	
	1.1 Intended readers	1-1
	1.2 Manual overview	1-1
	1.3 Software version	1-1
	1.4 Typography	1-2
	1.5 Precautions	1-2
Chapter 2	Introduction	
	2.1 SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system	2-1
	2.2 Part numbers and options	2-10
Chapter 3	Installation	
	3.1 What's in the box	3-1
	3.2 Site preparation	3-3
	3.3 Installation of the ADU	3-16
	3.4 Installation of the ACU	3-23
	3.5 Installation of the VSAT modem	3-24
Chapter 4	Interfaces	
	4.1 Interfaces of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU	4-1
	4.2 Interfaces of the VSAT modem	4-6
Chapter 5	Power and startup	
	5.1 Power up procedure	5-1
	5.2 Initialization steps in daily use	5-2
Chapter 6	Configuration	
	6.1 Introduction to the built-in web interface	6-1
	6.2 Calibration	6-4
	6.3 Configuration with the web interface	6-19
	6.4 Keypad and menus of the ACU	6-48
	6.5 SNMP support	6-54
Chapter 7	Installation check	
	7.1 Installation check list: Antenna	7-1
	7.2 Installation check list: ACU, connectors and wiring	7-2
	7.3 Installation check list: Functional test in harbor	7-4

Chapter 8	Service	
	8.1 Helpdesk	8-1
	8.2 Software update	8-5
	8.3 Modem configuration	8-9
	8.4 Status signalling with LEDs and status messages	8-10
	8.5 Removal and replacement of the ACU	8-12
	8.6 Removal and replacement of ADU modules	8-13
	8.7 Troubleshooting, basics	8-17
	8.8 Returning units for repair	8-18
Appendix A	Technical specifications	
	A.1 Specifications	A-2
	A.2 Patents	A-4
	A.3 Outline drawings	A-5
	A.4 VSAT LNB Data Sheet (physical LNB)	A-7
	A.5 VSAT 8W BUC Data Sheet (Extended), SAILOR 900	A-9
	A.6 VSAT 20W BUC Data Sheet (Extended), SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power	A-11
Appendix B	Installation of the dual antenna solution	
	B.1 Introduction	B-1
	B.2 Installation of the dual antenna solution	B-2
	B.3 Configuration of the dual antenna solution	B-5
	B.4 Flow chart for installation of the dual antenna solution	B-10
Appendix C	VSAT modem cables	
	C.1 Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A	C-2
	C.2 Modem Cable iDirect Serial and RSSI	C-3
Appendix D	VSAT modem settings	
	D.1 Performance optimization for blockage	D-1
	D.2 OpenAMIP setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution	D-3
	D.3 Serial setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution	D-13
	D.4 COMTECH 570L and ROSS box	D-16
	D.5 COMTECH 570L	D-18
	D.6 COMTECH CDM 840	D-21
	D.7 STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem	D-24
	D.8 Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem	D-28

	D.9 Inmarsat G5 modem	D-31
	D.10 Linkway S2 modem	D-34
	D.11 iDirect X7	D-39
Appendix E	Command line interface	
	E.1 Introduction	E-1
	E.2 Supported commands	E-2
Appendix F	SAILOR VSAT – cURL commands	
	F.1 Introduction	F-1
	F.2 Supported commands	F-1
Appendix G	DVB-S satellites	
Appendix H	Grounding and RF protection	
	H.1 Why is grounding required?	H-1
	H.2 Grounding Recommendations	H-2
	H.3 Alternative grounding for steel hulls	H-4
	H.4 Alternative grounding for aluminum hulls	H-6
	H.5 Alternative grounding for fibre glass hulls	H-7
	H.6 Separate ground cable	H-8
	H.7 Jumper cable for grounding	H-11
	H.8 RF interference	H-12
Appendix I	System messages	
	I.1 Event messages – overview	I-1
	I.2 List of ADU events	I-2
	I.3 List of ACU events	I-9
Appendix J	Approvals	
	J.1 Overview	J-1
	J.2 CE (RED)	J-1
	J.3 Eutelsat S.A – ESV Summary Sheet	J-3
	J.4 Russian Maritime Register of Shipping	J-4
	J.5 Japan Radio Law (AC powered), SAILOR 900	J-6
	J.6 Japan Radio Law (AC powered), SAILOR 900HP	J-7
	J.7 Intelsat qualification	J-8
Glossary	Glossary-1
Index	Index-1

List of Figures

Chapter 1 About this manual

Chapter 2 Introduction

Figure 2-1:	Above Deck Unit and Antenna Control Unit (ACU).....	2-2
Figure 2-2:	Above Deck Unit (ADU)	2-3
Figure 2-3:	SAILOR 900: Above Deck Unit modules 1/2.....	2-4
Figure 2-4:	SAILOR 900 HP: Above Deck Unit modules 1/2.....	2-5
Figure 2-5:	SAILOR 900: Above Deck Unit modules 2/2.....	2-6
Figure 2-6:	SAILOR 900 HP: Above Deck Unit modules 2/2.....	2-7
Figure 2-7:	ACU, connector overview	2-8
Figure 2-8:	ACU front.....	2-9

Chapter 3 Installation

Figure 3-1:	Signal degradation because of obstructing objects	3-4
Figure 3-2:	2 blocking zones with no-transmit zones, azimuth (example).....	3-5
Figure 3-3:	Blocking zone with no-transmit zones, elevation angle (example).....	3-5
Figure 3-4:	Radiation hazard, safety distance 30 m or 47 m (SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power)	3-6
Figure 3-5:	Maximum distance from the ship's motion centre (h max)	3-6
Figure 3-6:	ADU mast flange, top and side view	3-8
Figure 3-7:	ADU mast flange, recommended flatness on the mast mount plateau.....	3-8
Figure 3-8:	ADU mast flange, distance to the welded seam.....	3-8
Figure 3-9:	ADU, bottom view	3-9
Figure 3-10:	Free mast length and bracing for a tall mast.....	3-9
Figure 3-11:	Interference with the vessel's radar	3-12
Figure 3-12:	Recommended distance to transmitters (m) for frequencies below 1000 MHz.....	3-14
Figure 3-13:	Drain pipe with free space	3-15
Figure 3-14:	Use of strong sling with a belt and tag lines for safe hoisting.....	3-16
Figure 3-15:	Free space for access to the service hatch.....	3-17
Figure 3-16:	ADU installation, webbed sling attached to the 4 lifting brackets	3-18
Figure 3-17:	Mounting the ADU on the mast flange	3-18
Figure 3-18:	Connecting the ADU cable	3-19
Figure 3-19:	Opening the service hatch	3-20
Figure 3-20:	ADU, bolt for optimum grounding.....	3-21
Figure 3-21:	ACU, On/off switch.....	3-23
Figure 3-22:	ACU, LAN connector at the front: Service port	3-23
Figure 3-23:	ACU, ground stud	3-24

Chapter 4 Interfaces

Figure 4-1:	ACU: LEDs, display and keypad.....	4-1
-------------	------------------------------------	-----

Figure 4-2:	ACU: LEDs, display and keypad (detailed)	4-1
Figure 4-3:	ACU, connector panel overview	4-1
Figure 4-4:	LAN connectors.....	4-6
Chapter 5 Power and startup		
Figure 5-1:	ACU display after first power on (example with LAN ports 1 and 4 used).....	5-1
Chapter 6 Configuration		
Figure 6-1:	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU	6-2
Figure 6-2:	SAILOR 900 Dashboard (example)	6-3
Figure 6-3:	Web interface: SETTINGS, Navigation (Heading and Position) (example).....	6-5
Figure 6-4:	Acquisition, search pattern.....	6-6
Figure 6-5:	Acquisition, search pattern for inclined orbit	6-7
Figure 6-6:	Acquisition, search pattern in gyro-free mode.....	6-7
Figure 6-7:	Web interface: SERVICE, Calibration	6-9
Figure 6-8:	Service profile for calibration	6-12
Figure 6-9:	Web interface: SERVICE, Calibration, TX cable calibration	6-13
Figure 6-10:	Example of a calibration (user controlled) – step by step	6-15
Figure 6-11:	Web interface: SERVICE, Line up: Ready for activation.....	6-16
Figure 6-12:	Web interface: SERVICE, Line up: Antenna ready.....	6-16
Figure 6-13:	Fixed TX gain principle (SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku).....	6-18
Figure 6-14:	Fixed TX gain principle (SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power)	6-18
Figure 6-15:	Topics in the web interface (SITE MAP)	6-19
Figure 6-16:	Web interface: DASHBOARD (example).....	6-20
Figure 6-17:	Web interface: SETTINGS, Modem profiles — list (example).....	6-26
Figure 6-18:	Web interface: SETTINGS, Modem profile – supported modems.....	6-27
Figure 6-19:	Satellite profile with generic modem	6-28
Figure 6-20:	Web interface: SETTINGS - list of satellite profiles (example).....	6-29
Figure 6-21:	Web interface: SETTINGS, Satellite profiles — new entry (example).....	6-29
Figure 6-22:	Web interface: SETTINGS, Blocking zones — azimuth, elevation and blocking map...	6-31
Figure 6-23:	Blocking zone, example: 315 - 45 degrees	6-32
Figure 6-24:	Blocking zone, example: 45 - 315 degrees	6-32
Figure 6-25:	Blocking zone and blocking map (example).....	6-34
Figure 6-26:	Web interface: SETTINGS, Network (default settings).....	6-35
Figure 6-27:	Web interface: SETTINGS, E-mail setup (example)	6-37
Figure 6-28:	Web interface: SETTINGS, Reporting	6-38
Figure 6-29:	Statistics — how to read data for a range.....	6-41
Figure 6-30:	Statistics report (example).....	6-41
Figure 6-31:	Web interface: Administration, change password.....	6-43
Figure 6-32:	Web interface: Administration, change guest password.....	6-44
Figure 6-33:	Web interface: ADMINISTRATION, User permissions	6-45
Figure 6-34:	Web interface: Administration, Export/import configuration	6-46

Figure 6-35:	Web interface: ADMINISTRATION, Factory default.....	6-47
Figure 6-36:	Display (example) and keypad of the ACU.....	6-48
Figure 6-37:	Antenna Control Unit, menu tree.....	6-50
Figure 6-38:	Reset the system.....	6-53
Figure 6-39:	Download of the MIB file.....	6-54

Chapter 7 Installation check

Chapter 8 Service

Figure 8-1:	Web interface: HELPDESK.....	8-2
Figure 8-2:	Web interface: HELPDESK, Event list.....	8-3
Figure 8-3:	Web interface: SERVICE, Self test.....	8-4
Figure 8-4:	Software update with the web interface.....	8-6
Figure 8-5:	Recovery procedure after failed software upload.....	8-7
Figure 8-6:	Upload software to terminal.....	8-7
Figure 8-7:	Verifying software update.....	8-8
Figure 8-8:	Modem access.....	8-9
Figure 8-9:	ACU — LEDs.....	8-11
Figure 8-10:	Removal and replacement of the ACU.....	8-12
Figure 8-11:	SAILOR 900: ADU modules and motor stop switch.....	8-13
Figure 8-12:	SAILOR 900HP: ADU modules and service switch.....	8-14
Figure 8-13:	SAILOR 900: ADU modules (continued).....	8-15
Figure 8-14:	SAILOR 900 HP: ADU modules (continued).....	8-16

App. A Technical specifications

Figure A-1:	Outline drawing: ADU.....	A-5
Figure A-2:	Outline drawing: ACU (AC powered).....	A-6

App. B Installation of the dual antenna solution

Figure B-1:	Dual mode antenna, overview.....	B-2
Figure B-2:	Dual mode antenna, connecting cables (example).....	B-4
Figure B-3:	Dual-antenna mode, link on DASHBOARD.....	B-5
Figure B-4:	Enabling dual-antenna mode in Master ACU.....	B-6
Figure B-5:	Dual-antenna mode, add modem profile for slave ACU (example).....	B-6
Figure B-6:	Dual-antenna mode, add Slave satellite profile.....	B-7
Figure B-7:	Dual-antenna mode, Activate.....	B-7
Figure B-8:	Dual-antenna mode, blocking zones — azimuth and elevation.....	B-8
Figure B-9:	Dual-antenna mode, line up.....	B-9
Figure B-10:	Flow chart.....	B-10

App. C VSAT modem cables

Figure C-1:	Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A.....	C-2
-------------	--	-----

Figure C-2:	Modem Cable iDirect Serial and RSSI	C-3
-------------	---	-----

App. D VSAT modem settings

Figure D-1:	Connecting iDirect iNFINITI 5000 series to the ACU (OpenAMIP)	D-4
Figure D-2:	Connecting iDirect Evolution X5 to the ACU (OpenAMIP).....	D-4
Figure D-3:	Supported OpenAMIP commands	D-5
Figure D-4:	VSAT modem profile, OpenAMIP (example)	D-9
Figure D-5:	Satellite profile, OpenAMIP (example).....	D-9
Figure D-6:	iDirect OpenAMIP troubleshooting.....	D-11
Figure D-7:	Connecting iDirect iNFINITI 5000 series to the ACU (Serial)	D-13
Figure D-8:	Connecting iDirect Evolution X5 to the ACU (Serial)	D-13
Figure D-9:	Modem profile, Serial (example).....	D-15
Figure D-10:	Satellite profile, Serial (example)	D-15
Figure D-11:	Connecting COMTECH 570L and ROSS box to the ACU (example).....	D-16
Figure D-12:	Modem profile, COMTECH 570L and ROSS (example).....	D-17
Figure D-13:	Satellite profile, COMTECH 570L and ROSS (example)	D-17
Figure D-14:	Connecting COMTECH 570L to the ACU (example).....	D-19
Figure D-15:	VSAT modem profile, COMTECH 570L (example).....	D-20
Figure D-16:	Satellite profile, COMTECH 570L (example)	D-20
Figure D-17:	Connecting COMTECH CDM 840 to the ACU (example).....	D-22
Figure D-18:	VSAT modem profile, COMTECH CDM 840 (example)	D-22
Figure D-19:	Satellite profile, COMTECH CDM 840 (example)	D-23
Figure D-20:	Satellite profile, COMTECH CDM 840, load configuration (example)	D-23
Figure D-21:	Connecting STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem to the ACU.....	D-24
Figure D-22:	VSAT modem profile, STM SatLink 2900 (example)	D-27
Figure D-23:	Satellite profile, STM SatLink 2900 (example).....	D-27
Figure D-24:	Connecting Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem to the ACU	D-28
Figure D-25:	Connecting Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem (rack) to the ACU	D-28
Figure D-26:	VSAT modem profile, Gilat Sky Edge II (example).....	D-30
Figure D-27:	Satellite profile, Gilat Sky Edge II (example).....	D-30
Figure D-28:	VSAT modem profile, Inmarsat G5 (example)	D-33
Figure D-29:	Satellite profile, Inmarsat G5 (example).....	D-33
Figure D-30:	Connecting LinkWay S2 modem to the ACU	D-34
Figure D-31:	Serial cable between the modem and the ACU.....	D-34
Figure D-32:	Modem profile for Linkway S2.....	D-37
Figure D-33:	Satellite profile with Linkway S2 modem profile	D-38
Figure D-34:	Connecting iDirect X7 modem to the ACU	D-39
Figure D-35:	Modem profile for iDirect X7	D-41
Figure D-36:	Satellite profile with iDirect X7 modem profile	D-41
Figure D-37:	Antenna IP address for LAN port 1 (from options file).....	D-42

App. E Command line interface

Figure E-1:	How to use the command line interface (example for telnet).....	E-1
Figure E-2:	Command line interface, login.....	E-1
App. F	SAILOR VSAT – cURL commands	
App. G	DVB-S satellites	
Figure G-1:	Satellite data, example from www.lyngsat.com.....	G-3
App. H	Grounding and RF protection	
Figure H-1:	Extending the ground plane.....	H-2
Figure H-2:	Grounding the ADU.....	H-3
Figure H-3:	Grounding at a dedicated RF ground (alternative).....	H-5
Figure H-4:	Alternative grounding for aluminium hulls.....	H-6
Figure H-5:	Alternative grounding for fiberglass hulls.....	H-7
Figure H-6:	Separate ground cable.....	H-8
Figure H-7:	Isolation of the ADU from the mounting base.....	H-9
Figure H-8:	ADU isolation and grounding cable.....	H-10
Figure H-9:	Jumper cable for grounding (specifications).....	H-11
App. I	System messages	
App. J	Approvals	

List of Tables

Chapter 1 About this manual

Chapter 2 Introduction

Table 2-1:	Model and part numbers for the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system.....	2-10
Table 2-2:	Model and part numbers for options of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system.....	2-10

Chapter 3 Installation

Table 3-1:	Maximum distance from the ship's motion center versus ship's roll period.....	3-7
Table 3-2:	Mast dimensions without braces.....	3-10
Table 3-3:	Mast dimensions with 3 braces.....	3-11
Table 3-4:	Mast dimensions with 2 braces.....	3-11
Table 3-5:	Minimum radar separation, X-band.....	3-13
Table 3-6:	Minimum radar separation, S-band.....	3-13
Table 3-7:	ADU cable types and maximum lengths.....	3-22

Chapter 4 Interfaces

Table 4-1:	AC power connector.....	4-2
Table 4-2:	N connector, outline and pin assignment.....	4-2
Table 4-3:	F connector, Rx and Tx, outline and pin assignment.....	4-2
Table 4-4:	NMEA 0183/2000 connector, outline and pin assignment.....	4-3
Table 4-5:	RS-232 connector, male, outline and pin assignment.....	4-5
Table 4-6:	RS-422 connector, male, outline and pin assignment.....	4-5
Table 4-7:	Ethernet connector, outline and pin assignment.....	4-6

Chapter 5 Power and startup

Chapter 6 Configuration

Table 6-1:	Heading mode options.....	6-5
Table 6-2:	Position mode options.....	6-6
Table 6-3:	Acquisition time.....	6-7
Table 6-4:	Satellite identifier and NID values.....	6-10
Table 6-5:	Possible error codes during calibration.....	6-10
Table 6-6:	Satellite requirements for elevation and carrier.....	6-12
Table 6-7:	Satellite elevation and max. allowed inclination.....	6-14
Table 6-8:	Web interface: Event icon.....	6-21
Table 6-9:	Web interface, DASHBOARD, SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku parameters.....	6-24
Table 6-10:	Web interface, DASHBOARD, VSAT MODEM parameter.....	6-24
Table 6-11:	Web interface, DASHBOARD, POINTING parameter.....	6-25

Table 6-12:	Web interface, DASHBOARD, TX parameter	6-25
Table 6-13:	Web interface, DASHBOARD, dual antenna (option).....	6-25
Table 6-14:	Modem configuration data	6-27
Table 6-15:	SAILOR 900: Elevation cutoff (in degrees) versus VSAT modem bandwidth and power .6-30	
Table 6-16:	SAILOR 900HP: Elevation cutoff (in degrees) versus VSAT modem bandwidth and power. 6-30	
Table 6-17:	Setup of LAN connectors	6-35
Table 6-18:	Statistics report, header record	6-39
Table 6-19:	Parameters recorded in a statistics report.....	6-40
Table 6-20:	Top-level menus of the ACU	6-50
Table 6-21:	ANTENNA menu of the ACU	6-51
Table 6-22:	MODEM menu of the ACU	6-52
Table 6-23:	NETWORK menu of the ACU.....	6-52
Table 6-24:	SATELLITE menu of the ACU	6-52
Table 6-25:	EVENTS menu of the ACU	6-53

Chapter 7 Installation check

Table 7-1:	Installation check list: Antenna	7-1
Table 7-2:	Installation check list: ACU, connectors and wiring	7-2
Table 7-3:	Installation check list: Functional test in harbour	7-4

Chapter 8 Service

Table 8-1:	LEDs of the ADU modules.....	8-10
Table 8-2:	LEDs on the ACU.....	8-11

App. A Technical specifications

Table A-1:	Patents.....	A-4
Table A-2:	Technical specifications for VSAT LNB 1/2	A-7
Table A-3:	Technical specifications for VSAT LNB 2/2	A-7
Table A-4:	4-band switching.....	A-8
Table A-5:	Technical specifications for VSAT 8 W BUC 1/3	A-9
Table A-6:	Technical specifications for VSAT 8 W BUC 2/3	A-9
Table A-7:	Technical specifications for VSAT 8 W BUC 3/3	A-10
Table A-8:	SAILOR 900HP: Technical specifications for VSAT 20 W BUC 1/3	A-11
Table A-9:	SAILOR 900HP: Technical specifications for VSAT 20 W BUC 2/3	A-11
Table A-10:	SAILOR 900HP: Technical specifications for VSAT 20 W BUC 3/3	A-12

App. B Installation of the dual antenna solution

Table B-1:	Dual mode antenna, cabling	B-4
------------	----------------------------------	-----

App. C	VSAT modem cables	
App. D	VSAT modem settings	
Table D-1:	RS-232 Console cable for iDirect VSAT modem.....	D-4
Table D-2:	Messages sent from the VSAT modem to the ACU (examples).....	D-5
Table D-3:	Messages sent from the ACU to the VSAT modem (examples).....	D-6
Table D-4:	Ranges for signal strength for iDirect OpenAMIP VSAT modem.....	D-6
Table D-5:	Information in the VSAT modem option file	D-8
Table D-6:	Requirements for VSAT modem option file, Serial	D-14
Table D-7:	Communication, COMTECH 570L.....	D-19
Table D-8:	Communication, COMTECH CDM 840.....	D-21
Table D-9:	Configuration of the STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem	D-25
Table D-10:	Configuration of Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem.....	D-29
Table D-11:	RS-232 [Set] and [Get] commands	D-31
Table D-12:	LAN1 - [Get] commands.....	D-32
Table D-13:	LAN1 - [Set] commands.....	D-32
Table D-14:	Linkway S2 modem command \$TTD	D-35
Table D-15:	LinkWay S2 modem command \$TIPCD.....	D-35
App. E	Command line interface	
Table E-1:	Command typography.....	E-2
Table E-2:	UCLI command: <code>config</code>	E-3
Table E-3:	UCLI command: <code>demo</code>	E-3
Table E-4:	UCLI command: <code>dual_antenna</code>	E-3
Table E-5:	UCLI command: <code>exit</code>	E-4
Table E-6:	UCLI command: <code>help</code>	E-4
Table E-7:	UCLI command: <code>modem</code>	E-5
Table E-8:	UCLI command: <code>satellite</code>	E-5
Table E-9:	UCLI command: <code>status</code>	E-8
Table E-10:	UCLI command: <code>system</code>	E-8
Table E-11:	UCLI command: <code>track</code>	E-9
Table E-12:	UCLI command: <code>zone</code>	E-10
App. F	SAILOR VSAT – cURL commands	
App. G	DVB-S satellites	
Table G-1:	Examples of DVB-S satellites for azimuth calibration.....	G-1
App. H	Grounding and RF protection	
App. I	System messages	
Table I-1:	ADU events	I-2
Table I-2:	ACU events.....	I-9

About this manual

1.1 Intended readers

This is an installation manual for the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system and the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power system, intended for installers of the system and service personnel. Personnel installing or servicing the system must be properly trained and authorized by Cobham SATCOM. It is important that you observe all safety requirements listed in the beginning of this manual, and install the system according to the guidelines in this manual.

1.2 Manual overview

This manual has the following chapters:

- *Introduction*
- *Installation*
- *Interfaces*
- *Power and startup*
- *Configuration*
- *Installation check*
- *Service*

This manual has the following appendices:

- *Technical specifications*
- *VSAT modem cables*
- *VSAT modem settings*
- *Installation of the dual antenna solution*
- *Command line interface*
- *DVB-S satellites*
- *Grounding and RF protection*
- *System messages*
- *Approvals*

1.3 Software version

This manual is intended for SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku with **software version 1.62-0029**.

1.4 Typography

In this manual, typography is used as indicated below:

Bold is used for the following purposes:

- To emphasize words.
Example: “Do **not** touch the antenna”.
- To indicate what the user should select in the user interface.
Example: “Select **SETTINGS** > **LAN**”.

Italic is used to emphasize the paragraph title in cross-references.

Example: “For further information, see *Connecting Cables* on page...”.

1.5 Precautions

1.5.1 Warnings, Cautions and Notes

Text marked with “Warning”, “Caution”, “Note” or “Important” show the following type of data:

- **Warning:** A Warning is an operation or maintenance procedure that, if not obeyed, can cause injury or death.
- **Caution:** A Caution is an operation or maintenance procedure that, if not obeyed, can cause damage to the equipment.
- **Note:** A Note gives information to help the reader.
- **Important:** A text marked Important gives information that is important to the user, e.g. to make the system work properly. This text does not concern damage on equipment or personal safety.

1.5.2 General precautions

All personnel who operate equipment or do maintenance as specified in this manual must know and follow the safety precautions. The warnings and cautions that follow apply to all parts of this manual.



WARNING! Before using any material, refer to the manufacturers' material safety data sheets for safety information. Some materials can be dangerous.



CAUTION! Do not use materials that are not equivalent to materials specified by Cobham SATCOM. Materials that are not equivalent can cause damage to the equipment.



CAUTION! The system contains items that are electrostatic discharge sensitive. Use approved industry precautions to keep the risk of damage to a minimum when you touch, remove or insert parts or assemblies.

Introduction

This chapter has the following sections:

- *SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system*
- *Part numbers and options*

2.1 SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku is a unique stabilized maritime VSAT antenna system operating in the Ku-band (10.7 to 14.5 GHz). It provides bi-directional IP data connections both on regional satellite beams and quasi-global Ku-band satellite networks. The system only requires a single 50 Ohm cable to provide the Above Deck Unit with both DC power, data and control information. The radome does not have to be removed neither before nor after the installation. To protect the Above Deck Unit the built-in DC motors act as brakes during transport and when the Above Deck Unit is not powered. The ADU system can be accessed remotely and in-depth performance analysis can be done using the built-in web interface.

This manual describes the variants of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system (for part numbers, see *Part numbers and options* on page 2-10):

- SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku (includes 8 W BUC and can be converted to GX/Ka)
- SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power (includes 20 W BUC and can be converted to GX/Ka)
- SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimised (includes 8 W BUC and can not be converted to GX/Ka)
- SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimised High Power (includes 20 W BUC and can not be converted to GX/Ka)

For information that applies to the high power variant only, the name SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power or **SAILOR HP** is used.

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system consists of the following units:

- Above Deck Unit (ADU)
- Antenna Control Unit (ACU)

The following figure shows the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system.

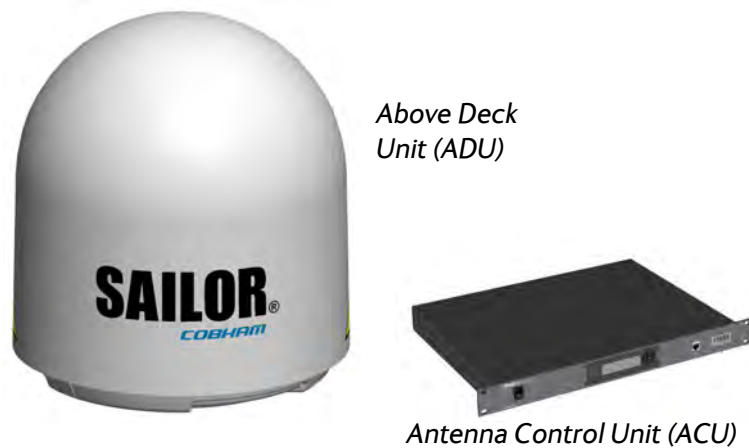


Figure 2-1: Above Deck Unit and Antenna Control Unit (ACU)

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku features

- Single 50 Ohm coax cable for the ADU.
- Support of several VSAT modems.
- Standard 8W or High Power 20W BUC options.
- Gyro-free operation.
- Ku-to-Ka-band conversion (SAILOR 7090B and SAILOR 7090E only)
- Dual antenna mode.
- SNMP support.
- Service communication using SAILOR FleetBroadband over WAN.
- Remote or local simultaneous software update of ADU and ACU via PC and Internet browser.
- Global RF configuration.
- Full remote control and troubleshooting with built-in test equipment (BITE).
- ACU with 4 x LAN, NMEA 0183, NMEA 2000, RS-232 and RS-422.
- All interfaces at the ACU, no additional units required.
- AC powered.
- No scheduled maintenance.

2.1.1 Above Deck Unit (ADU)

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU is a 103 cm VSAT stabilized tracking antenna, consisting of a suspended antenna with a standard global RF configuration. It is stabilized by heavy duty vibration dampers in 3-axis (plus skew) and can be used in environments with elevations of -25° to $+125^{\circ}$. The ADU is powered by the ACU and protected by a radome. All communication between the ADU and the ACU passes through a single standard 50 Ohm cable (with N connector) through the rotary joint. No cable work is required inside the radome.



Figure 2-2: Above Deck Unit (ADU)

Modules in the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU

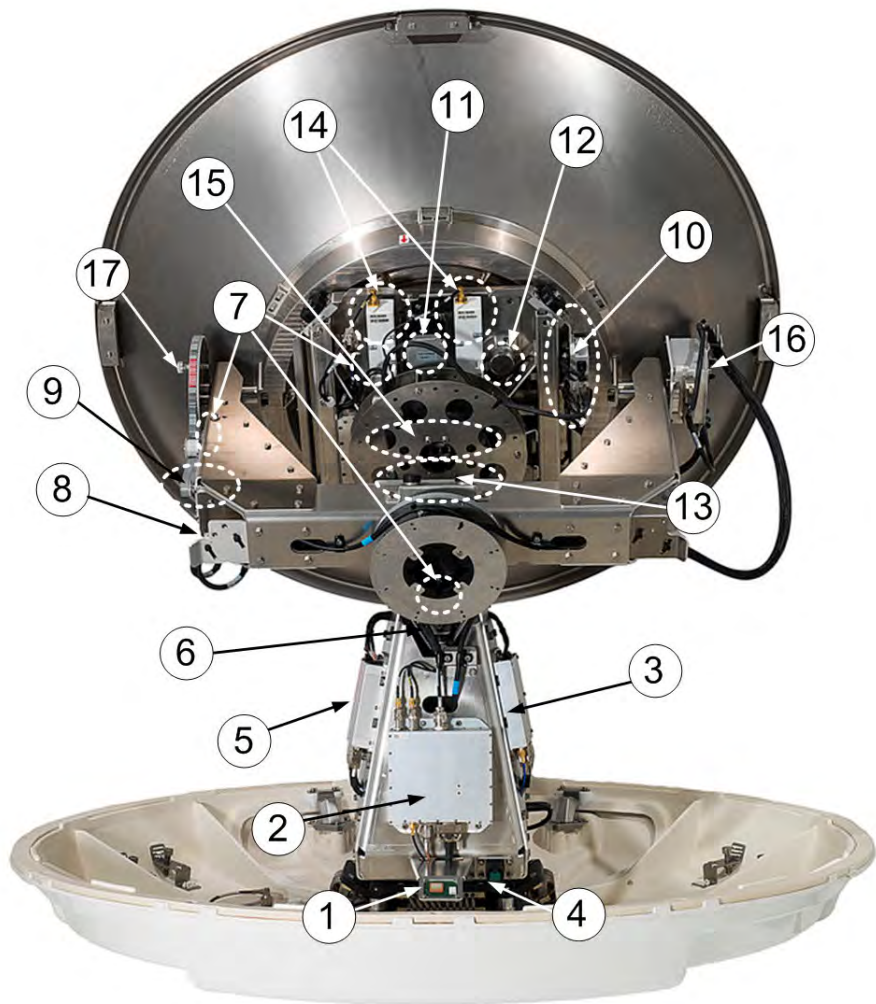


Figure 2-3: SAILOR 900: Above Deck Unit modules 1/2

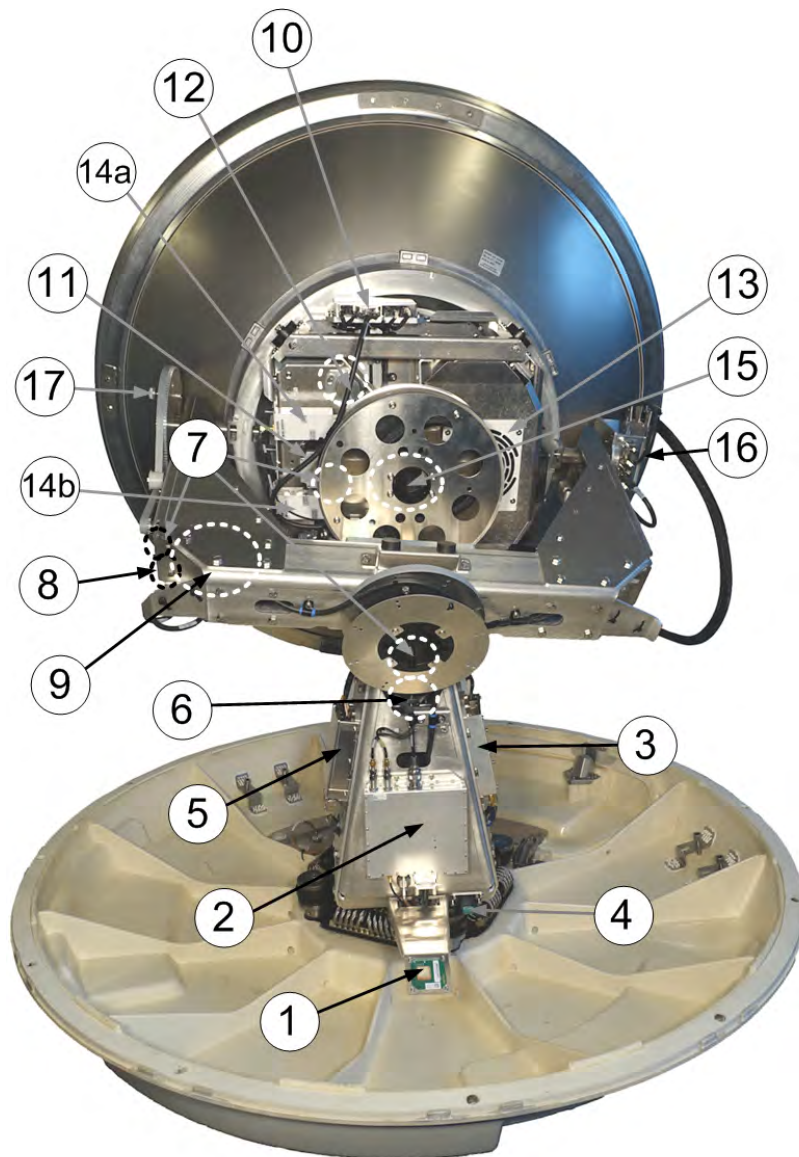


Figure 2-4: SAILOR 900 HP: Above Deck Unit modules 1/2

1. GNSS module (GPS, GLONASS, BEIDOU).
2. VSAT Interface Module (VIM).
3. Pedestal Control Module (PCM).
4. Service switch.
5. DC-Motor Driver Module for cross elevation (DDM).
6. Cross elevation motor and encoder.
7. Zero Reference Module (x4) (ZRM) (3 pcs. on Figure 2-3 and Figure 2-4, not visible on photos)
8. DC-Motor Driver Module for elevation (on the bottom) (DDM).
9. Elevation motor and encoder (not visible).

- 10.Polarization Motor Module (PMM).
- 11.Polarization motor.
- 12.Polarization encoder.
- 13.Block Up Converter (BUC).
- 14.Low Noise Block downconverter (LNB) (x2).
- 15.Ortho Mode Transducer (OMT) (not visible on photo).
- 16.Inertial Sensor Module (ISM).
- 17.Elevation locking pin to lock the antenna dish in a fixed position.

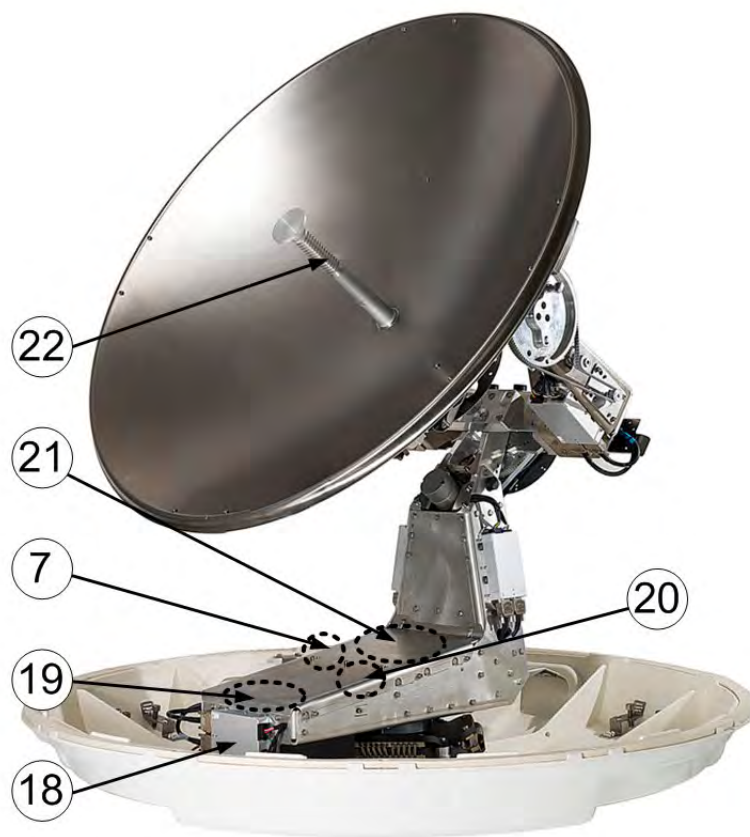


Figure 2-5: SAILOR 900: Above Deck Unit modules 2/2

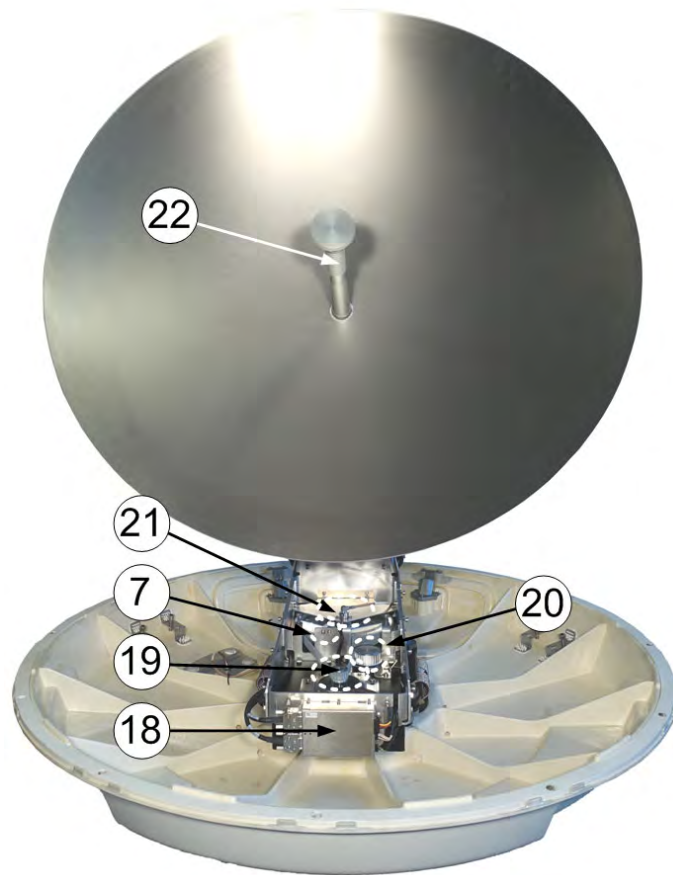


Figure 2-6: SAILOR 900 HP: Above Deck Unit modules 2/2

- 18.DC-Motor Driver Module for Azimuth (DDM).
- 19.Azimuth motor.
- 20.Azimuth encoder.
- 21.Rotary joint.
- 22.Feed horn.

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU interface

All communication between the ADU and the ACU passes through a single standard 50 Ohm cable (with N connector) through the rotary joint. No cable work is required inside the radome.

Installation friendly

Four lifting brackets (included in the delivery) and reuse of packing material help getting the ADU safely into place. Satellite profile parameters are entered using the built-in web server of the ACU, using a PC.

Service friendly

The system configuration is saved in two modules, there is no loss of data at repair. The large service hatch of the radome gives easy access to the ADU on site. The service switch in the ADU stops the DC Motor Driver modules and turns the BUC off. The service tools for replacing modules are placed on a tool holder inside the radome.

All modules have a service and power LED status indicator. Each module is encapsulated in a metal box with self-contained mounting bolts. If necessary, belts and modules can be exchanged through the service hatch on site.

You can do remote diagnostics and service with the ADU. Its built-in test equipment checks constantly the ADU's modules for proper functioning, it monitors and logs information for all modules. The ADU performs a POST (Power On Self Test) and you can request a self test (PAST, Person Activated Self Test) and Continuous Monitoring (CM). Error codes can be read out in the web interface and in the display of the ACU.

ADU software is updated automatically when making a software update of the ACU.

2.1.2 Antenna Control Unit (ACU)

The ACU is the central unit in the system. It contains all user interfaces and manages all communication between the ADU and the connected VSAT modem, a connected PC and an optional FleetBroadband service communication line. The ACU has a display, status LEDs and a keypad. It provides a DHCP client. During configuration you can configure heading offset, save satellite and VSAT modem setups and enter *No Transmit Zones* (blocking zones in which the ADU does not transmit). The ACU provides DC power to the ADU through a single coaxial cable. The ACU comes in a 19" rack version.

ACU interfaces

The ACU has the following interfaces and switch:

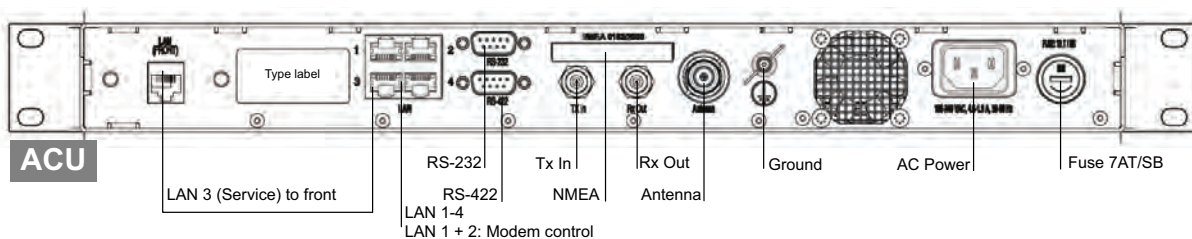


Figure 2-7: ACU, connector overview

- N-connector for ADU cable (50 Ohm).
- 2 x F connectors for Rx and Tx cables (75 Ohm) to VSAT modem.
- Multi connector for NMEA interfaces (for input from GPS compass or Gyro compass).
- RS-422 interface for modem control.
- RS-232 interface for modem control.
- 4 x LAN ports for VSAT modem control and user equipment (i.e. for SAILOR FleetBroadband service communication line or WAN port for VSAT Internet).
- AC input.
- On/Off power switch

The ACU has an additional LAN connector at the front for accessing the service port from the ACU front panel. This requires that you loop back on the rear of the ACU.



Figure 2-8: ACU front

Service friendly

You can do remote diagnostics and service with the ACU. Its built-in test equipment checks constantly for proper functioning. It performs POST (Power On Self Test) and you can request a PAST (Person Activated Self Test). Continuous Monitoring (CM) is also available. BITE error codes can be read out in the web interface and in the display of the ACU.

Software update is done via a connected PC and the built-in web interface of the ACU.

2.1.3 VSAT Modem

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku is designed to be operated with third-party VSAT modems. For a list of supported VSAT modems see the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku data sheet at www.cobham.com/satcom.

2.1.4 Satellite type approvals

For a list of satellite type approvals see the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku data sheet at www.cobham.com/satcom.

2.1.5 Service activation

Before you can start using the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku, you need to activate the system for VSAT service. Contact your service provider for activation.

2.2 Part numbers and options

2.2.1 Applicable model and part numbers

The following model and part numbers are available for the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system:

Part number	Model number	Description
407009B-00501	7009B	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Above Deck Unit (ADU)
407009E-00500	7009E	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power Above Deck Unit (ADU)
407009I-00500	7009I	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimised Above Deck Unit (ADU)
407009J-00500	7009J	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimised High Power Above Deck Unit (ADU)
407016C-00510	7016C	SAILOR ACU

Table 2-1: Model and part numbers for the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system

2.2.2 Options for SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku

The following options are available for the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system:

Part number	Description
407090A-950	Antenna cable 50 m N-Conn (not mounted), male/male
407090A-925	Pigtail Cable 1.25 m, N-Conn, female/male
407090A-010	Accessory kit for dual VSAT antenna operation

Table 2-2: Model and part numbers for options of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system

Installation

This chapter has the following sections:

- *What's in the box*
- *Site preparation*
- *Installation of the ADU*
- *Installation of the ACU*
- *Installation of the VSAT modem*

3.1 What's in the box

3.1.1 To unpack

Unpack the ADU and ACU. Check that the following items are present:

- SAILOR ADU with 4 lifting brackets (already mounted)
- Accessory kit for SAILOR ADU:
 - Package with bolts and washers
- SAILOR 7016C ACU
- Accessory kit for SAILOR 7016C ACU:
 - NMEA multi-connector
 - RJ45 patch cable (35 cm)
 - Coax cable F-F, low loss, 75 Ohm (100 cm, 2 pcs)
 - Ethernet cable (200 cm)
 - Power cable (230 VAC) with Schuko (Euro) wall plug

3.1.2 Initial inspection

Inspect the shipping cartons and wooden box immediately upon receipt for evidence of damage during transport. If the shipping material is severely damaged or water stained, request that the carrier's agent be present when opening the cartons and wooden box. Save all box packing material for future use.



WARNING! To avoid electric shock, do not apply power to the system if there is any sign of shipping damage to any part of the front or rear panel or the outer cover. Read the safety summary at the front of this manual before installing or operating the system.

After unpacking the system, i.e. removing the top and sides of the wooden box and opening the cartons, inspect it thoroughly for hidden damage and loose components or fittings. If the contents are incomplete, if there is mechanical damage or defect, or if the system does not work properly, notify your dealer.

3.1.3 Tools needed

The following tools may be needed during the installation:

- Torx TX 30 to open the locks of the service hatch
- Torque wrench to fasten the mounting bolts for the ADU
- Torque wrench to fasten the N connector at the ADU
- PC and Internet browser
- Crimping tools

3.1.4 Transport of the antenna

During transport the antenna must be able to move freely inside the radome. You must follow the instructions below to keep a valid warranty:



CAUTION!

Do not lock the antenna dish with the elevation locking pin during transport.

Do not strap parts of the antenna.

These actions might cause damage to the antenna.

Damage due to actions listed above will void the warranty.

3.2 Site preparation

Consider the following topics when installing the ADU:

- *General site considerations*
- *Obstructions (ADU shadowing)*
- *Blocking zones – azimuth and elevation*
- *Safe access to the ADU: Radiation hazard*
- *Ship motion and offset from the ship's motion centre*
- *ADU mast design: Foundation and height*
- *Interference from radar, GPS, L-band and other transmitters*
- *Other precautions*

3.2.1 General site considerations

For optimum system performance, follow some guidelines on where to install or mount the different components of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku System:

- It is recommended to mount the ADU in a location with as much **360° free line of sight to the satellite** as possible while making sure that the support structure obeys the requirements for the mast foundation.
- Mount the ADU on stiffened structures with a minimum of exposure to vibrations.

Painting the radome

Customers may wish to paint the radome in order to match the vessel's color. Any paint used must be non-metallic based. Painting the radome may impact RF performance and may lead to over-heating, causing the antenna to go in safe mode (switch off).

Cobham SATCOM recommends that the radome should NOT be painted. Painting the radome will not void the general warranty regarding material and workmanship etc. It is only the performance that cannot be guaranteed.

Modifying the radome or using another radome

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku antenna comes with a type-approved radome fitted from the factory. This radome is specifically designed for a minimal loss of RF performance for this specific antenna. Insertion loss reduces the available signal and decreases the effective radiated power and G/T (the ability to receive a weak signal). Modifying the radome or using another radome may increase the antenna side lobes, resulting in interference with other communication systems and thereby void satellite operator approvals. Other electrical effects on antenna performance of another radome, or of modifying the radome, include a change in the antenna beam width and shifting of the antenna bore sight.

Cobham SATCOM recommends that the radome should **NOT** be modified or changed to another type. Exchanging or modifying the radome will not void the general warranty for material and workmanship etc. but the performance cannot be guaranteed, and the satellite operator approvals will not be valid.

3.2.2 Obstructions (ADU shadowing)

The ADU is stabilized in 3-axis (plus skew) and can be used in environments with elevations of -25° to $+125^{\circ}$ to allow for continuous pointing even in heavy sea conditions. The ADU beam is approximately 1 m in diameter for the first 30 m from the ADU. Beyond 30 m the beam gradually widens so that it is approximately 5 m in diameter at 100 m distance. This beam expansion continues with increasing distance. Any obstructions, such as masts, funnels, bridge house etc. within this field can cause signal degradation or signal loss.

Note Due to the short wavelength at Ku band and the narrow beam width of the ADU even a **6 mm steel wire placed within 50 m** inside the beam can cause signal degradation.

For optimum performance adhere to the following guidelines:

1. Place the ADU so that it has as much free line-of-sight as possible without any structures in the beam through one full 360 degrees turn of the vessel.
2. Do not place the ADU close to large objects that may block the signal.
3. Elevate the ADU by mounting it on a mast or on a mounting pedestal on a deck or deck house top to avoid obstruction.

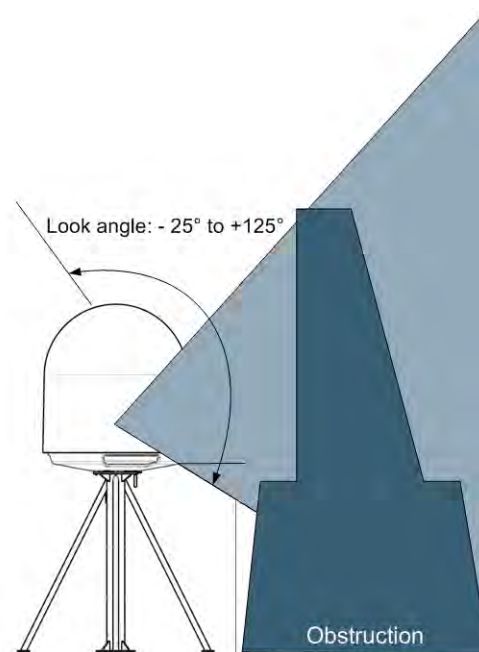


Figure 3-1: Signal degradation because of obstructing objects

3.2.3 Blocking zones – azimuth and elevation

Your installation may require that you set up blocking zones for the ADU, i.e. areas where the ADU will not transmit and areas where transmit power is potentially dangerous for persons frequently being in these zones. You can set up 8 blocking zones. Each blocking zone is set up with azimuth start and stop, and elevation angle.

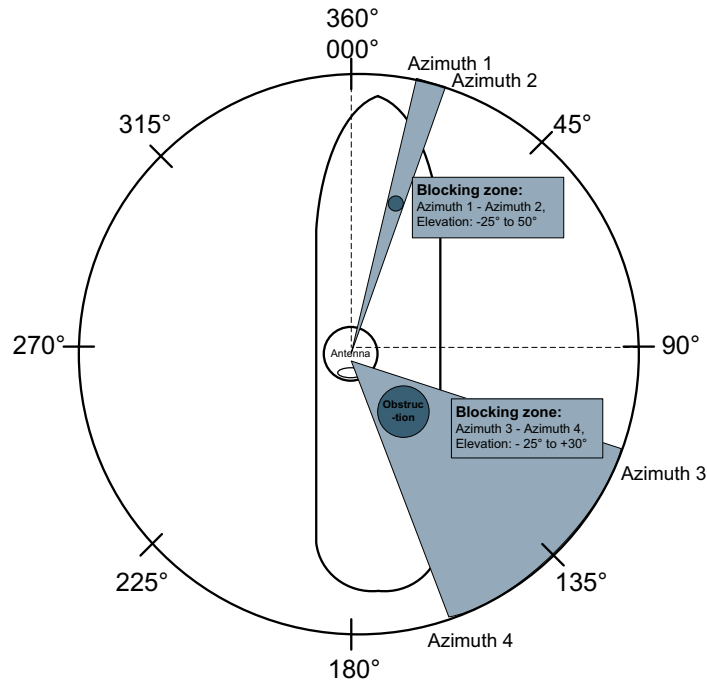


Figure 3-2: 2 blocking zones with no-transmit zones, azimuth (example)

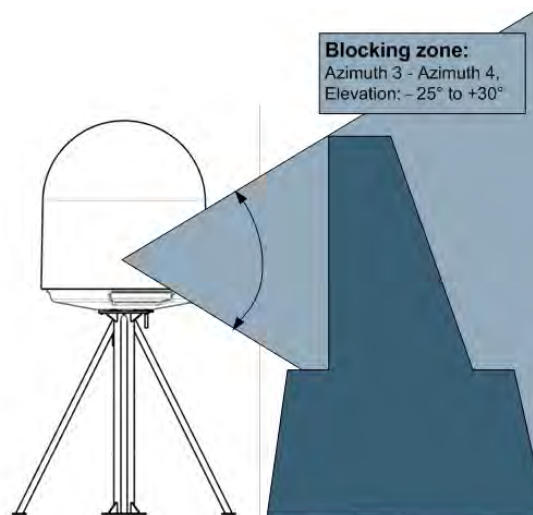


Figure 3-3: Blocking zone with no-transmit zones, elevation angle (example)

The blocking zones are set up in the built-in web interface of the ACU. For further information see *To set up blocking zones (RX and TX)* on page 6-31.

3.2.4 Safe access to the ADU: Radiation hazard

The SAILOR 900 VSAT ADU radiates up to 49 dBW EIRP, or 54.3 dBW EIRP for SAILOR 900 HP. This translates to a minimum safety distance of 30 m, or 47 m for SAILOR 900 HP, from the ADU while it is transmitting, based on a radiation level of 10 W/m^2 .



Figure 3-4: Radiation hazard, safety distance 30 m or 47 m (SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power)

3.2.5 Ship motion and offset from the ship’s motion centre

When installing the ADU you must consider the mounting height carefully. The higher up the ADU is mounted, the higher is the linear g force applied to the ADU. The g force also depends on the roll period of the ship, see Table 3-1. If the g force applied is too high, performance and ADU signal stabilization may be reduced and eventually the ADU may be damaged. See the following table for allowed mounting heights above the ship’s motion center.

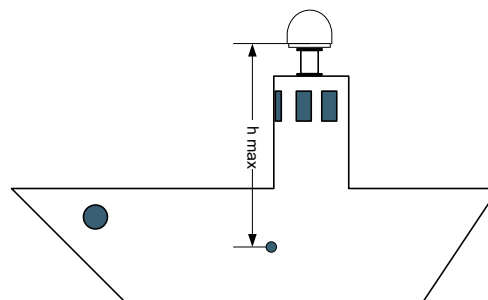


Figure 3-5: Maximum distance from the ship’s motion centre (h max)

Even though it is recommended to mount the ADU high, keep the distance between the ADU and the ship's motion center as short as possible.

Min. roll period	Max. ADU mounting height (h max)	
	Full performance	Potential risk of damage
4 s	12 m	16 m
6 s	27 m	35 m
8 s	48 m	62 m
10 s	75 m	98 m

Table 3-1: Maximum distance from the ship's motion center versus ship's roll period

3.2.6 ADU mast design: Foundation and height

The antenna system is designed for harsh environmental conditions at sea, both in regards to vibration amplitude and speed. The antenna system performs optimally when mounted on a properly designed foundation. When mounting the antenna the overall goal is to establish a foundation which is as rigid as possible. However, in some scenarios establishing a very rigid foundation is difficult and inappropriate. This section aims at defining the minimum design criterion for the mast. In addition, some specific design suggestions are presented. In order to keep the presented designs to a manageable size only a sample of design suggestions is presented. Note that the design values given below depend on rigid interfaces between antenna and ship, the values are furthermore given based on a standard steel type (e.g. S235JR, S355JO).

The placement of the ADU must ensure a rigid structural connection to the hull or structure of the ship. Parts of the ship with heavy resonant vibrations are not suitable places for the ADU. A small platform or short mast must provide rigid support for the ADU fastening bolts and a rigid interface to the ship. If it is necessary to use a tall mast, you must stabilize the mast with bracing. In regards to stiffness the overall criterion is that the first structural mode of the mast or foundation (where the antenna system is mounted) should be above 30 Hz. All the designs presented in the following sections respect this standard.

Important

An antenna mounted on a less stiff structure might be functional, however, this could lead to a decrease in the operational lifetime of the antenna system and possibly a decreased performance under operation

The ADU mast must be designed to carry the weight of the ADU unit, that is approximately 135 kg (+ the weight of the mast flange). The mast must also be able to withstand on-board vibrations and wind speeds up to 110 knots on the radome, even in icing conditions.

Follow the guidelines in the sections:

- *ADU mast flange*
- *Mast length and diameter*

ADU mast flange

For best performance provide a mast flange with a minimum of four gusset plates. To prepare the mast flange do as follows:

1. Fit the top of the ADU mast with a flange with clearance holes matching the bushings in the radome and with minimum 4 gusset plates. No center hole is necessary in the flange.
 - **Flange thickness:** Minimum 15 mm.
 - **4 gusset plates:** Minimum 15 mm thick, must be placed as close as possible to the holes in the mounting plate and evenly distributed.

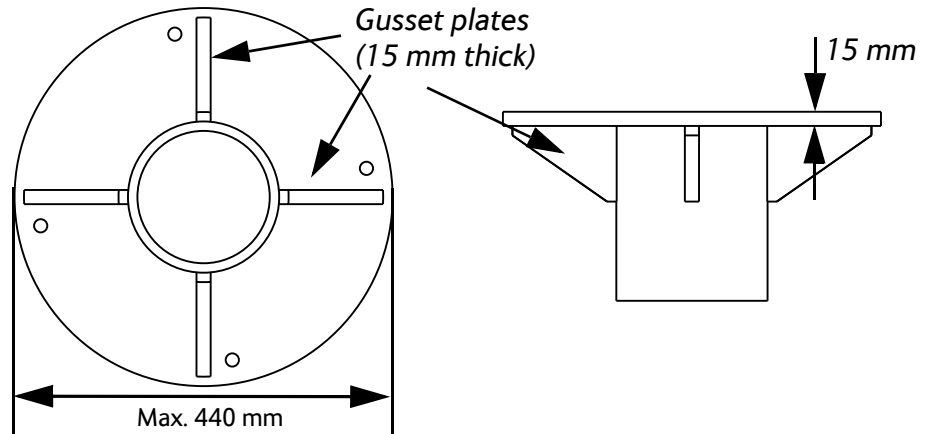


Figure 3-6: ADU mast flange, top and side view

2. Make sure that the flatness on the mast mount plateau is below 3,0 mm.



Figure 3-7: ADU mast flange, recommended flatness on the mast mount plateau

3. Allow sufficient space so the nut is free of the welded seam and there is room for tools (min. 50 mm).

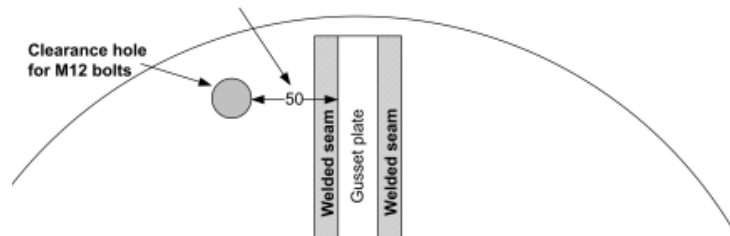


Figure 3-8: ADU mast flange, distance to the welded seam



CAUTION! Avoid sharp edges where the flange is in direct contact with the radome. Round all edges as much as possible to avoid damaging the surface of the radome.

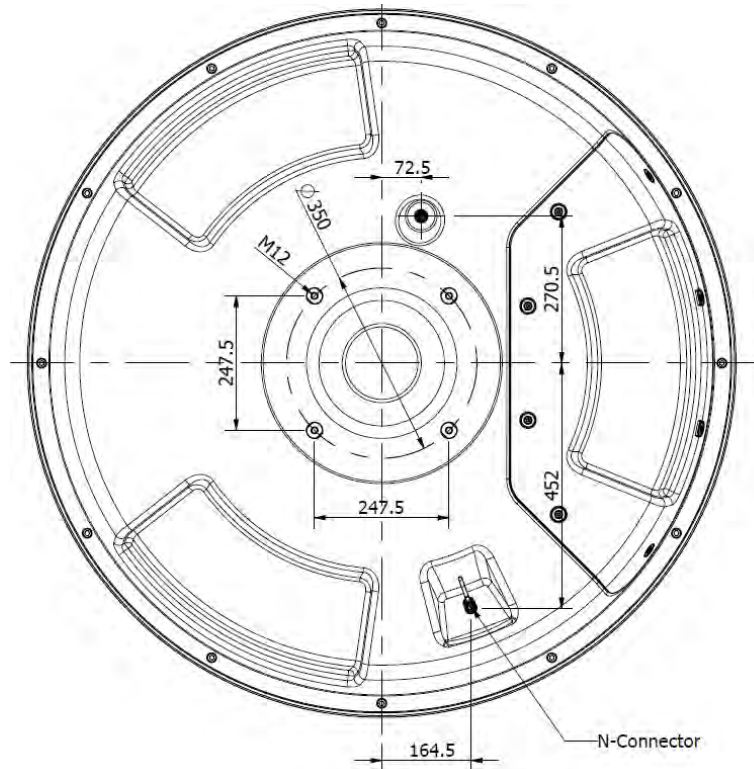


Figure 3-9: ADU, bottom view

Mast length and diameter

The mast wall thickness is in the following design examples set to 5 mm and the brace wall thickness to 4 mm. A larger wall thickness yields more stiffness (valid design) whereas a thinner wall thickness yields a more weak structure (not valid design).

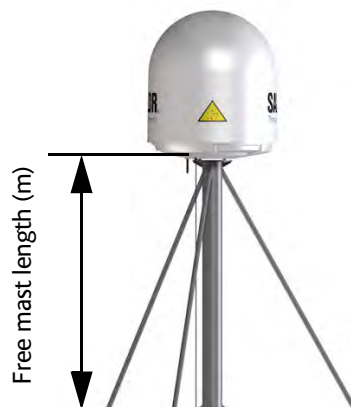


Figure 3-10: Free mast length and bracing for a tall mast

Note Make sure that there is free space below the drain tube. Read also *Condensation and water intrusion* on page 3-15.

The tables in the next sections suggest design values for the free mast length.

Note The tables list the values for **steel masts**. For **aluminium masts**, the free mast length is reduced to 75% of the values for steel.

Note Bracing and rigid masts can still not prevent vertical vibration if the mast is attached to a deck plate that is not rigid. Make every effort to mount the mast on a surface that is well supported by ribs. If this is not possible, provide extra deck plate propping.

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU mast length

The below tables show the minimum dimensions for a SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU mast with and without stays or wires. Note that the values are only guidelines - always consider the environment and characteristics of the ship before deciding on the mast dimensions.


Mast without braces	Max. free mast length (steel), (m)	Outer diameter (mm)	Wall thickness (mm)	Weight (kg/m)
	0.4 ^a	200	5	24.0
	0.6	220	5	26.5
	0.8	250	5	30.2
	1	270	5	32.7

Table 3-2: Mast dimensions without braces

- a. The height of 0.4 m is not recommended to be used as it will make access through the ADU's service hatch difficult.

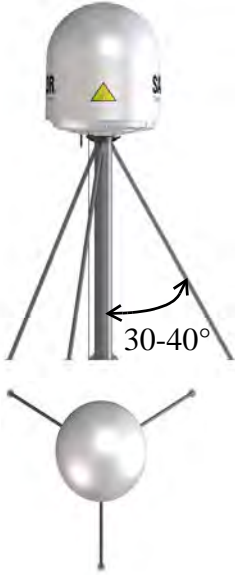
Mast with 3 braces	Max. free mast length (steel), (m)	Outer Diameter (mm)	Wall Thickness (mm)	Outer Diameter for brace (mm)	Thickness for brace (mm)
	1.2	140	10	50	5.0
	1.2	200	5	50	5.0
	1.6	140	10	70	5.0
	1.6	200	5	70	5.0
	2	160	10	70	5.0
	2	220	5	70	5.0
	2.5	180	10	80	5.0
	2.5	220	5	80	5.0

Table 3-3: Mast dimensions with 3 braces


Mast with 2 braces	Max. free mast length (steel), (m)	Outer Diameter (mm)	Wall Thickness (mm)	Outer Diameter for brace (mm)	Thickness for brace (mm)
	1.2	160	10	80	5.0
	1.2	200	5	80	5.0
	1.6	180	10	80	5.0
	1.6	220	5	80	5.0
	2	180	10	80	5.0
	2	240	5	80	5.0
	2.5	200	10	80	5.0
	2.5	260	5	80	5.0

Table 3-4: Mast dimensions with 2 braces

3.2.7 Interference from radar, GPS, L-band and other transmitters

Note Do not place the ADU close to interfering signal sources or receivers. For allowed distances to other transmitters see Figure 3-12: *Recommended distance to transmitters (m) for frequencies below 1000 MHz* on page 3-14. We recommend testing the total system by operating all equipment simultaneously and verifying that there is no interference.

The ADU must be mounted as far away as possible from the ship's radar and high power radio transmitters, because they may compromise the ADU performance. RF emission from radars might actually damage the ADU. The ADU itself may also interfere with other radio systems.

Radar

It is difficult to give exact guidelines for the minimum distance between a radar and the ADU because radar power, radiation pattern, frequency and pulse length/shape vary from radar to radar. Further, the ADU is typically placed in the near field of the radar and reflections from masts, decks and other items in the vicinity of the radar are different from ship to ship.

However, it is possible to give a few guidelines. Since a radar radiates a fan beam with a horizontal beam width of a few degrees and a vertical beam width of up to $\pm 15^\circ$, the worst interference can be avoided by mounting the ADU at a different level – meaning that the ADU is installed minimum 15° above or below the radar antenna. Due to near field effects the benefit of this vertical separation could be reduced at short distances (below approximately 10 m) between radar antenna and the ADU. Therefore it is recommended to ensure as much vertical separation as possible when the ADU has to be placed close to a radar antenna.

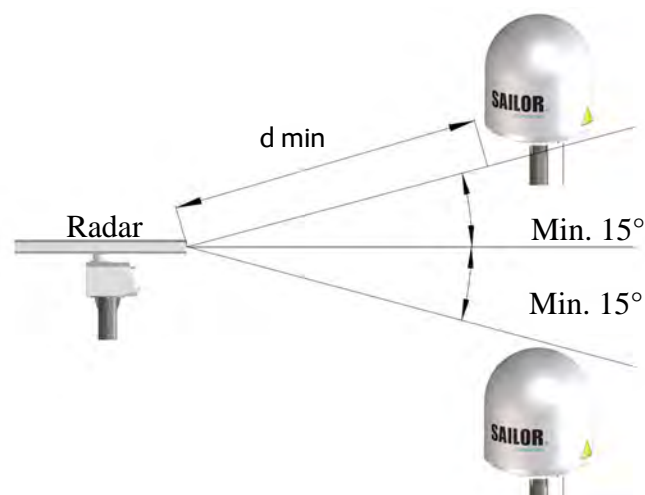


Figure 3-11: Interference with the vessel's radar

Radar distance

The minimum acceptable separation (d_{min}) between a radar and the ADU is determined by the radar wavelength/frequency and the power emitted by the radar. The tables below

show some “rule of thumb” minimum separation distances as a function of radar power at X and S band. If the d min. separation listed below is applied, antenna damage is normally avoided.

“d min.” is defined as the shortest distance between the radar antenna (in any position) and the surface of the ADU.

X-band (~ 3 cm / 10 GHz) damage distance		
Radar power	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU	
	d min. at 15° vertical separation	d min. at 60° vertical separation
0 – 10 kW	1.0 m	1.0 m
30 kW	2.0 m	1.0 m
50 kW	3.3 m	1.7 m

Table 3-5: Minimum radar separation, X-band

S-band (~ 10 cm / 3 GHz) damage distance		
Radar power	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU	
	d min. at 15° vertical separation	d min. at 60° vertical separation
0 – 10 kW	2.0 m	1.0 m
30 kW	3.0 m	1.5 m
50 kW	5.0 m	2.5 m

Table 3-6: Minimum radar separation, S-band

The separation distance for C-band (4-8 GHz) radars should generally be the same as for SX-band radars.

Radar interference

Even at distances greater than “d min.” in the previous section the radar might still be able to degrade the performance of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system.

The presence of one or more S or X-band radars within a radius up to 100 m may cause a minor degradation of the Ku-band connection. The degradation will be most significant at high radar pulse repetition rates.

As long as receiving conditions are favorable, this limited degradation is without importance. However, if receiving conditions are poor – e.g. due to objects blocking the signal path, heavy rainfall or icing, low satellite elevation and violent ship movements – the small extra degradation due to the radar(s) could cause poor connection quality.

The presence of S-band radar(s) is unlikely to cause any performance degradation – as long as the minimum distances (d min.) listed in the previous section are applied.

It is strongly recommended that interference free operation is verified experimentally before the installation is finalized.



CAUTION! The ADU must never be installed closer to a radar than “d min.” - even if experiments show that interference free operation can be obtained at shorter distances than “d min.” in the previous section.

GPS receivers

Good quality GPS receivers will work properly very close to the ADU - typically down to one meter outside the main beam.

L-band antennas

If L-band antennas are installed on the same vessel, keep a minimum distance of 3 meters from the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU to the L-band antenna.

Other transmitters

The following figure shows the minimum recommended distance to transmitters in the frequency range below 1000 MHz.

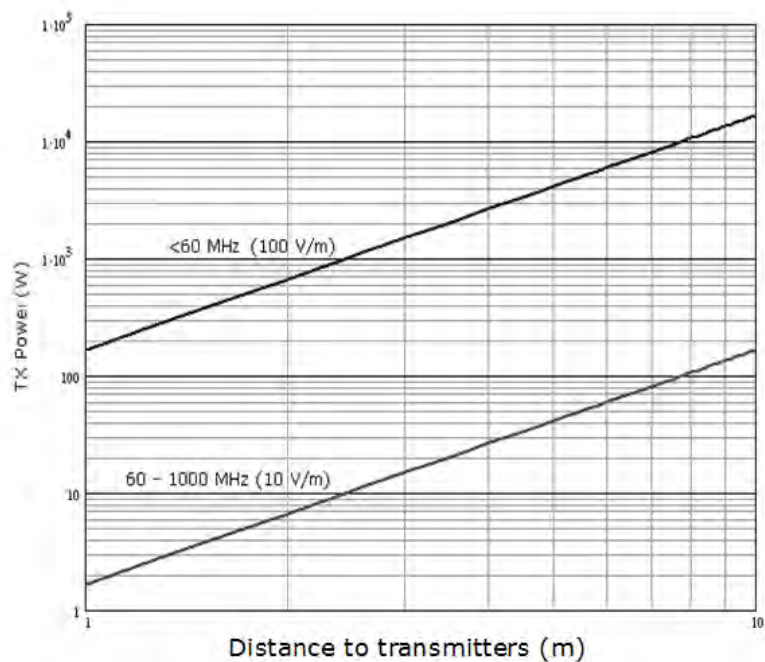


Figure 3-12: Recommended distance to transmitters (m) for frequencies below 1000 MHz

3.2.8 Other precautions

Condensation and water intrusion

In some weather conditions there may occur condensation inside the radome. The drain tube is designed to lead any water away from inside the radome.

1. If possible, install the radome such that direct spray of seawater is avoided.
2. Make sure the ADU's drain tube is open and that there is free space between the drain tube and the mounting surface so water can escape and there is ventilation for the ADU.



Figure 3-13: Drain pipe with free space

3. Do not use pneumatic tools for cleaning the radome, especially at a short distance and directly at the split between top and bottom.
4. Do not place the ADU close to a funnel, as smoke deposits are corrosive. Furthermore, deposits on the radome can degrade performance.

3.3 Installation of the ADU

3.3.1 Prerequisites

- Ensure that the crane hook has a closing mechanism to prevent accidental slippage of the lifting straps.
- Check for potential interference, read more in *Interference from radar, GPS, L-band and other transmitters* on page 3-12.
- Install the ADU at a location where **vibrations are limited to a minimum**.

3.3.2 Overview

The ADU is shipped fully assembled. You have to install it on the mast and attach the ADU cable.



WARNING! Use a strong webbed sling with a belt to lift the ADU without damaging the radome. Make sure that the sling can carry 135 kg.



WARNING! The ADU may be subject to swaying motions in windy conditions. Always use tag lines to stabilise the ADU during hoisting. It is the crane operator's responsibility to determine whether the environmental conditions are suitable for a safe lift.

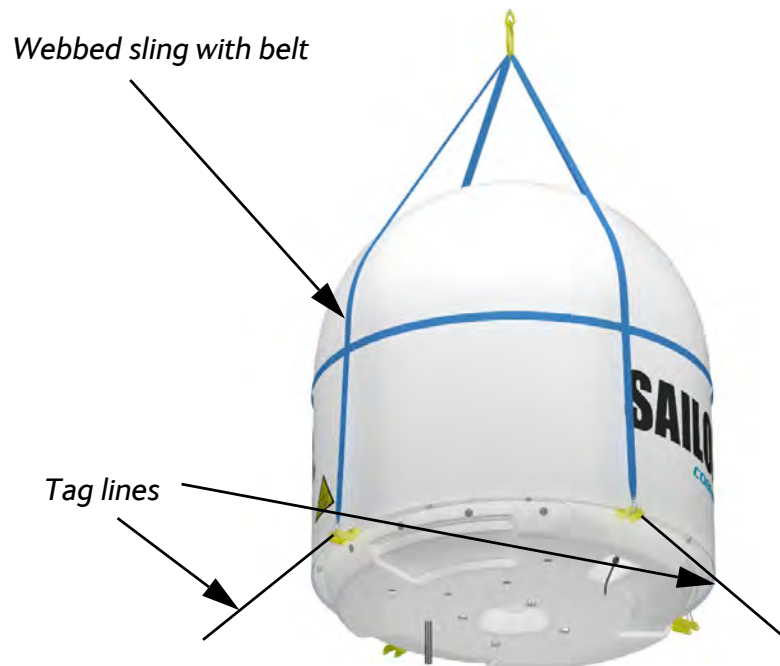


Figure 3-14: Use of strong sling with a belt and tag lines for safe hoisting

Before installing the ADU read the following guidelines.

3.3.3 To install the ADU

Prerequisites

Make sure that there is sufficient space underneath the ADU to open the service hatch. Through this hatch you access the ADU modules for service and maintenance.



Figure 3-15: Free space for access to the service hatch

You do not need to align the ADU with the bow-to-stern line of the ship. When configuring the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku you make an automated azimuth calibration to obtain the correct azimuth of the ADU.

- Important: Maintain the **vertical orientation of the ADU center line**.
- Check for potential interference, read more about this in *Interference from radar, GPS, L-band and other transmitters* on page 3-12.
- Install the ADU where **vibrations are limited to a minimum**.
- Always use **all 4 bolts** when installing the ADU.
- Maximum allowed cable loss ≤ 20 dB at 1700 MHz. This is to ensure optimum performance.
- Maximum allowed DC loop resistance, screen plus center lead ≤ 0.9 Ohm, ≤ 0.7 Ohm for SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power.

Installation procedure

To install the ADU, do as follows:

1. Install the mast with the mast flange and have the 4 M12 bolts ready.
2. Undo all shipping buckles, take off the wooden top and remove the casing.
3. Unscrew the 4 bolts holding the ADU on the wooden platform.
4. Attach a webbed, four-part sling with a belt to all 4 lifting brackets.



Figure 3-16: ADU installation, webbed sling attached to the 4 lifting brackets

5. Attach 2 tag lines of suitable length to 2 lifting brackets and man them.
6. With a crane lift the ADU off the wooden platform and move it on top of the ADU mast.
7. Install the ADU on the mast flange with 4 M12 bolts and washers. Tightening torque value: 30 Nm. Read carefully and follow instructions given in *To ground the ADU* on page H-2.



Figure 3-17: Mounting the ADU on the mast flange

8. Remove the 4 lifting brackets. For safekeeping fasten the lifting brackets inside the bottom of the radome.
9. Attach the N-connector of the ADU cable to the ADU and fasten it with 2.5 Nm.

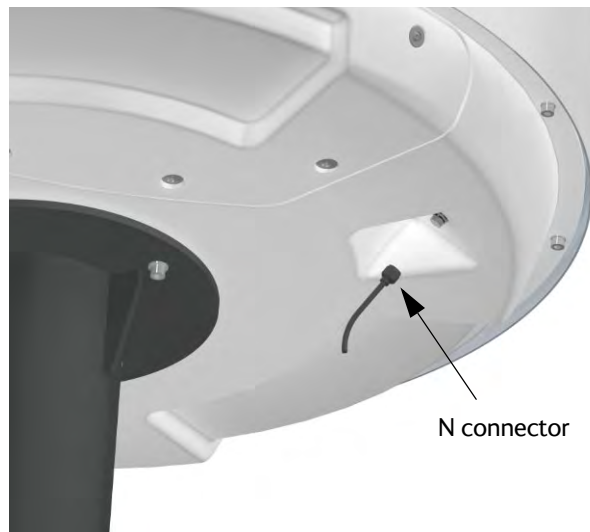


Figure 3-18: Connecting the ADU cable

10. Ensure that the connector is properly protected against seawater and corrosion. As a minimum, wrap it with self-amalgamating rubber.
11. Where the cables are exposed to mechanical wear — on deck, through bulkheads, etc. — protect the cables with steel pipes. Otherwise, follow standard procedures for cabling in ship installations.

Maximum allowed RF loss in the ADU cable

Maximum allowed cable loss is ≤ 20 dB at 1700 MHz. This is to ensure optimum performance of the system.

Maximum allowed DC loop resistance, screen plus center lead ≤ 0.9 Ohm, $F \leq 0.7$ Ohm for SAILOR 900 HP.

3.3.4 To open the service hatch

You can remove the hatch for better mobility when servicing the antenna. Do as follows to open the service hatch:

1. With a Torx TX30 screw driver, loosen the 8 screws that keep the hatch in place.
2. Lower the service hatch and let it hang in the 2 strips.



Figure 3-19: Opening the service hatch

3.3.5 To ground the ADU

The ADU must be grounded using the mounting bolts.

To ground the ADU do as follows:

1. Clean the metal underneath the head of **at least** one bolt of insulating protective coating and use a serrated washer to obtain a good ground connection.
2. Tighten the bolt. Use stainless steel bolts and washers.
3. Seal the area suitably in order to avoid corrosion of the grounding point (recommended).

For optimum grounding connect the ground wire to the bolt marked in the figure below.

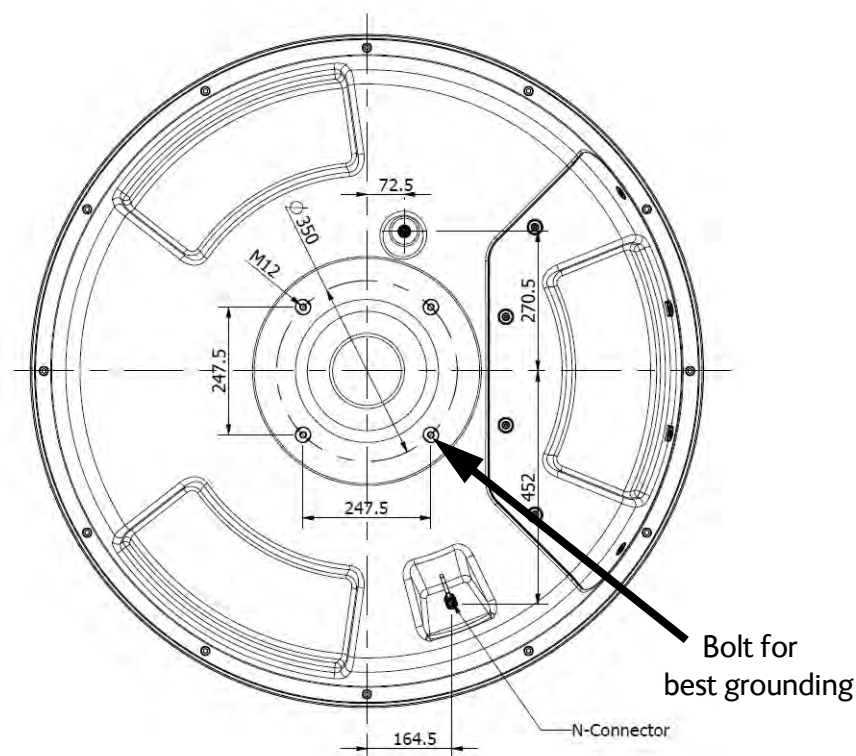


Figure 3-20: ADU, bolt for optimum grounding

If the ADU cannot or should not be electrically connected directly to the mounting surface, you can use a separate grounding cable to make the connection between the ADU and the common ground to which the ACU is also connected. If grounding to the ship ground is impossible, for example if you have a fibre glass hull, see *Alternative grounding for fibre glass hulls* on page H-7. For further information on grounding and RF protection see *Grounding and RF protection* on page H-1.

3.3.6 Alternative ADU cable

The allowed RF loss in the antenna cable is determined by the attenuators of the PSM and VIM modules. The electronic design guarantees that minimum 20 dB RF loss @ 1700 MHz in the antenna cable will work, but typically an RF loss of about 25 dB will be within the limits of the cable calibration. You can verify the cable attenuation margin with the cable calibration. See *Cable calibration* on page 6-13 for more details.

The DC loop resistance of the antenna cable must be maximum 0.9 Ohm (0.7 Ohm for SAILOR 900 HP). This is to ensure the power requirements from ACU to the antenna and to ensure the performance of the system. Preferably choose one of the cable types listed in the table below.

Cable Type	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku		SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power	
	Absolute max. length (m)	Absolute max. length (ft)	Absolute max. length (m)	Absolute max. length (ft)
RG223-D	25 m	82 ft	25 m	82 ft
RG214/U	50 m	164 ft	50 m	164 ft
S 07272B-05	95 m	311 ft	70 m	229 ft
LMR-600-50	135 m	442 ft	105 m	344 ft
LDF4.5-50 Andrew	300 m	984 ft	290 m	951 ft

Table 3-7: ADU cable types and maximum lengths

1. Check the data sheet from the cable supplier and verify the values:
 The RF- attenuation and the DC loop resistance are kept within the maximum specified values:
 - ADU cable RF-attenuation at 1700 MHz: max. 20 dB including connector.
 - ADU cable RF-attenuation at 4450 MHz: max. 35 dB including connector.
 - ADU cable modem-attenuation at 10 MHz: Max. 2 dB
 - ADU cable modem-attenuation at 36 and 54 MHz: Max. 4 dB
 - ADU cable DC loop resistance max: 0.9 Ohm (0.7 Ohm for SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power).
2. Ensure that the specified minimum bending radius is respected. If this is not the case, the loss in the cable will increase. Check the documentation from the cable supplier.

3.4 Installation of the ACU

The following sections describe the installation and grounding of the ACU.

3.4.1 To install the ACU

To install the ACU, do as follows:

1. Slide the ACU into a 1U space in a 19" rack.
2. Make sure that the air intakes on the side of the unit are not blocked.
3. Mount the screws in each side through the holes in the front and fasten the screws to the rack. Make sure that the unit is mounted securely according to the requirements for your 19" rack.
4. Connect all cables. See *Interfaces of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU* on page 4-1 for a description of the ACU connectors.



Figure 3-21: ACU, On/off switch

5. Set the On/Off switch at the front panel to On.

For a description of the connectors see *Connector panel — overview* on page 4-1. The ACU has an additional LAN connector at the front, for accessing the service port from the ACU front panel.



Figure 3-22: ACU, LAN connector at the front: Service port

For information about power supply and power requirements see *Power and startup* on page 5-1.

3.4.2 To ground the ACU

1. Make sure that the grounding requirements are met. See the appendix *Grounding and RF protection* on page H-1 for details about grounding.
2. At the ACU end, connect the shield of the ADU cable to ship ground.
3. Make sure the rack is connected to ship ground.
4. To ensure that the ACU is grounded – also if the ADU cable is disconnected from the ACU, connect an extra ground wire from the rack to the ground stud on the ACU. This ground wire must be a heavy wire or braid cable with a larger diameter than the coax cable.

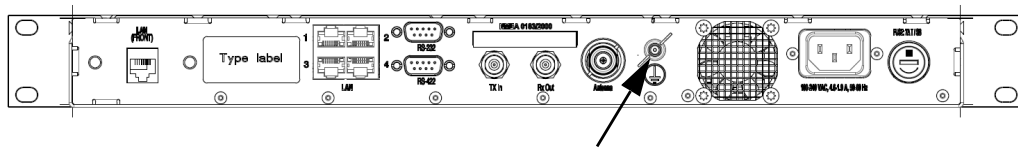


Figure 3-23: ACU, ground stud

3.5 Installation of the VSAT modem

For a list of supported VSAT modems see the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku data sheet or Figure 6-18: *Web interface: SETTINGS, Modem profile – supported modems*.

3.5.1 General mounting considerations

1. Mount the VSAT modem close to the ACU, preferably at a distance < 1 m.
2. Connect all cables. See *VSAT modem settings* on page D-1 for guidelines how to connect one of the supported VSAT modems.
3. For cable specifications see *VSAT modem cables* on page C-1.

Connectors and pin-out of the VSAT modem

For connectors and pin-out see the user documentation of the VSAT modem and *Interfaces of the VSAT modem* on page 4-6.

Wiring Power

Provide power to the VSAT modem, see the user documentation of the unit.

Interfaces

This chapter has the following sections:

- *Interfaces of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU*
- *Interfaces of the VSAT modem*

4.1 Interfaces of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU

4.1.1 LEDs, display and keypad

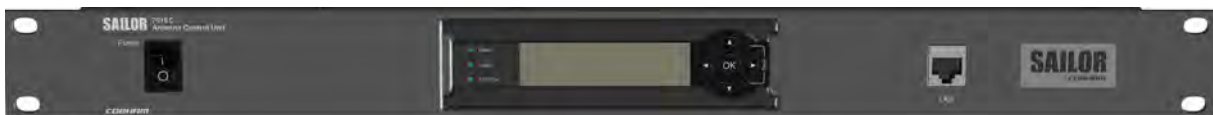


Figure 4-1: ACU: LEDs, display and keypad



Figure 4-2: ACU: LEDs, display and keypad (detailed)

Connector panel — overview

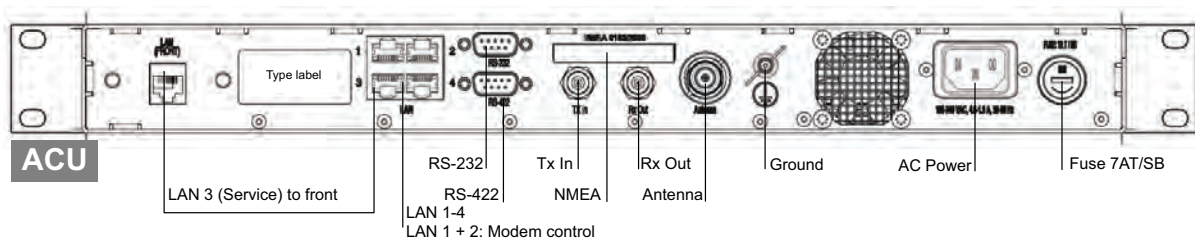


Figure 4-3: ACU, connector panel overview

The connector LAN on the front panel is typically connected to the service port at LAN3 at the rear panel with a straight Ethernet cable. Then you can access the service port from the front of the ACU.

4.1.2 AC input connector

Connect the power cable to the AC power connector.

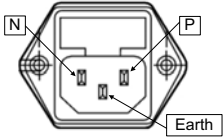
Outline (on the ACU)	Voltage range
	100–240 VAC

Table 4-1: AC power connector

For more information about power supply and power requirements see the chapter *Power up procedure* on page 5-1.

4.1.3 ADU connector

There is just one cable from the ACU to the ADU. This is used to power the ADU, supply 10 MHz clock, handle all communication between ACU and ADU, and deliver the VSAT Rx and Tx signals.


Outline (on the ACU)	Conductor	Pin function
	Inner	DC to ADU 10 MHz clock to ADU ACU to ADU internal communication VSAT Rx/Tx
	Outer	GND (Shield)

Table 4-2: N connector, outline and pin assignment

Important

Do not use TNC connectors on the ADU antenna cable or on pigtailed. TNC connectors cannot carry the DC current for operating the ADU.

4.1.4 Rx/Tx connectors for VSAT modem

Connect the Rx and Tx channels of the VSAT modem to the Rx and Tx connectors of the ACU with the 2 supplied Rx/Tx cables (75 Ohm coax, F-F, 1 m).


Outline (on the ACU)	Pin number	Pin function
	1	Inner conductor: 10 MHz clock, VSAT Rx/Tx
	2	Outer conductor: GND (Shield)

Table 4-3: F connector, Rx and Tx, outline and pin assignment

For step-by-step guidelines how to set up the VSAT modem see *VSAT modem settings* on page D-1.

4.1.5 NMEA 0183 connector

Connect the ship's gyro to this connector. A mating connector is supplied with the ACU.


Outline (on the ACU)	Pin	Pin function	Wire color
	1	Not connected	–
	2	NET-H (NMEA 2000)	White
	3	NET-L (NMEA 2000)	Blue
	4	NET-S (NMEA 2000)	Red
	5	NET-C (NMEA 2000)	Black
	6	Not connected	–
	7	Not connected / RS-232 RX NMEA 0183 ^a	–
	8	RS-232 GND RS-422 shield, connect only one end.	
	9	RS-422 Line B (+) NMEA 0183	
	10	RS-422 Line A (-) NMEA 0183	
	11	Not connected	–

Table 4-4: NMEA 0183/2000 connector, outline and pin assignment

- a. The Power Supply Module (PSM) module must be hardware ID 2 or higher. To check your system download a diagnostics report and search for PSM.
 Example for version 2 PSM: psm 2 0A.02 0406210014 1.47-0096 1.00-0001.
 Example for version 1 PSM: psm 1 0B.01 0389420009 1.47-0096 1.00-0001.

(Hardware prepared for NMEA 2000, for future use)

NMEA 2000 power: 9-16 VDC. NMEA 2000 LEN (Load Equivalency Number): 2 (100mA)

NMEA 0183

The NMEA 0183 connection supports IEC 61162-1 and IEC 61162-2.

- IEC 61162-1, baud rate 4800, format 8N1.
- IEC 61162-2, baud rate 38400, format 8N1.

The baud rate is auto detected by the ACU, the user cannot configure this interface.

Supported NMEA strings in order of priority:

1. HEHDT (North seeking Gyro compass)
2. GPHDT (GPS compass)
3. HNHDT (Non-North seeking gyro compass)
4. IIHDT (Integrated Instrument)
5. HCHDT (Magnetic compass)

Note | Any HDT sentence is supported as long as it complies with the following header format: "\$xxHDT" where xx can be two characters e.g. IN for \$INHDT.

Recommended NMEA 0183 cable:

Two-wire constructed with one enclosed shield.

Network signal pair:

- Size: No. 24 AWG (0.24 mm²) or heavier
- Characteristic impedance: 95 - 140 Ohm
- Propagation delay: 5 nanoseconds per meter, maximum
- 15 Twists (minimum) per meter

4.1.6 RS-232 and RS-422 connectors

Use these connectors to connect the ACU to the VSAT modems with serial interfaces. See *Interfaces of the VSAT modem* on page 4-6 for further details about the RS-232 or RS-422 connector.

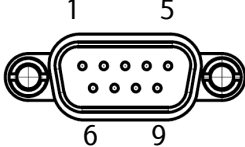
Outline (on the ACU)	Pin	Pin function
	1	Not connected
	2	RXD
	3	TXD
	4	DTR
	5	Ground
	6	DSR
	7	RTS
	8	CTS
	9	Receive Signal Strength Indicator

Table 4-5: RS-232 connector, male, outline and pin assignment

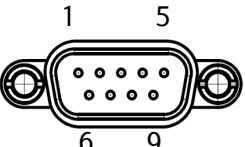
Outline (on the ACU)	Pin	Pin function
	1	Ground
	2	Line A RXD (+)
	3	Line B TXD (+)
	4	Ground
	5	Ground
	6	Not connected
	7	Line A RXD (-)
	8	Line B TXD (-)
	9	Not connected

Table 4-6: RS-422 connector, male, outline and pin assignment

4.1.7 LAN1, LAN2, LAN3 and LAN4 connectors

Four Ethernet connectors (type RJ45) for PC/lap tops, routers, wireless access points. The maximum cable length per connection is 100 m. Depending on the VSAT modem connected, a LAN connector may be used for modem control.

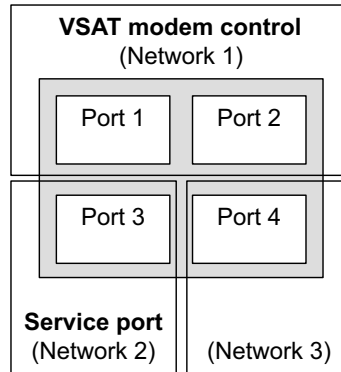


Figure 4-4: LAN connectors

Cable type: CAT5, shielded.

For information how to configure the LAN network see *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.

Outline	Pin	Pin function	Wire color
	1	Tx+	White/orange
	2	Tx-	Orange
	3	Rx+	White/green
	4	Not connected	Blue
	5	Not connected	White/blue
	6	Rx-	Green
	7	Not connected	White/brown
	8	Not connected	Brown

Table 4-7: Ethernet connector, outline and pin assignment

4.2 Interfaces of the VSAT modem

For interfaces of the VSAT modem and how to connect it correctly to the ACU see the user documentation of the VSAT modem. You find step-by-step guidelines how to set up the VSAT modem in the Appendix D, *VSAT modem settings*.

Power and startup

5.1 Power up procedure

1. Connect power to the ACU.
2. Connect power to the VSAT modem.
3. Switch on the ACU. The unit starts up and goes through an initialization procedure:
 - ACU POST
 - ADU Initializing
 - ADU POST
 - READY

This may take some time (up to a couple of minutes).

4. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku is ready to be calibrated (for first time power up) or receive data from the VSAT modem (when in normal operation). The ACU display shows the following message:



Figure 5-1: ACU display after first power on (example with LAN ports 1 and 4 used)

The LEDs **Power** and **Fail/Pass** are **steady green**, the LED **Logon** is off. For further information on status indicators see *Status signalling with LEDs and status messages* on page 8-10.

Make sure there are no hardware failures or error codes present, check the display of the ACU for events. For more information on error codes and events see *Troubleshooting, basics* on page 8-17 and *System messages* on page I-1.

5. Continue to get the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system operational:
 - Calibrate the system, see *Calibration* on page 6-4.
 - Create modem profiles and satellite profiles, see *Modem profiles and satellite profiles* on page 6-26.

For step-by-step instructions, see *Introduction to the built-in web interface* on page 6-1. For installation check lists see, *Installation check* on page 7-1.

5.2 Initialization steps in daily use

Once the system is configured and a satellite profile is active, the startup sequence is as follows:

- ACU POST
- ADU Initializing
- ADU SW upload (If the software versions in the ADU and ACU are not the same, a software update is done during startup.)
- ADU POST
- READY
- POINTING ANTENNA
- ACQUIRING SIGNAL
- TRACKING

5.2.1 SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku operational

When the display shows **TRACKING** and the LED **Logon** is steady green, the system is operational.

Configuration

This chapter has the following sections:

- *Introduction to the built-in web interface*
- *Calibration*
- *Configuration with the web interface*
- *Keypad and menus of the ACU*
- *SNMP support*

6.1 Introduction to the built-in web interface

6.1.1 Overview

Use the built-in web interface (installation of software is not necessary) of the ACU to make a full configuration of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku with the correct VSAT modem, the satellite positions you intend to use and other parameters. You can use a standard Internet browser.

For quick start instructions see *Calibration* on page 6-4.

Important

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system is not designed to be connected directly to the Internet. It must be connected behind a dedicated network security device such as a firewall.

If any ports of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku are exposed to the Internet you must change the default passwords as anyone with access and malicious intent can render the system inoperable.

6.1.2 Connecting to the web interface

To connect to the web interface of the ACU do as follows:

1. Power up the system, i.e. switch on the ACU.
2. Wait until the LEDs on the front plate of the ACU show that the system is ready to be configured.
 - Power LED: Green
 - Logon LED: Off
 - Fail/Pass LED: Flashing green, during power-on self test, after that steady green.
3. Connect a PC to LAN interface 3 (Service port, standard Ethernet) at the rear panel of the ACU or to the front LAN connector of the ACU.



Figure 6-1: SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU

If you want to use another LAN port you must configure it according to your network requirements. For information how to configure the LAN connectors see *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.

4. Open your Internet browser and enter the IP address of the ACU. The default IP address is **http://192.168.0.1**.

When the login screen is displayed you have verified that the connection to the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can be established. The web interface is ready for use.

First time login as administrator

For a new installation you must activate local administration and set the admin password. This is also the case after reset to factory default.

Do as follows:

1. On the ACU keypad, push and hold the left arrow key for 5 seconds.
2. Wait for the very short display of **Local administration**, followed by the event text: **0807F-0 WARNING Local administration enabled**. This will give you temporary administrator access for **1 hour or until next restart**.
3. Open your browser and access the web interface.
4. Enter user name: **admin** (no password is required). The **DASHBOARD** is displayed.



Accessing the ACU with the local administration function does not change the current administrator password.

5. To create or change the password select **ADMINISTRATION > User login** and locate the section **Change Login**.
6. Type in the new password (minimum 8 characters) and click **Change**. No old password is required.

After 1 hour or a restart the new administrator password is required.

If you cannot establish a connection there might be problems with the Proxy server settings of your PC. See *Proxy server settings in your browser* on page 6-22 for further information.

The web interface shows the **DASHBOARD** page.



Figure 6-2: SAILOR 900 Dashboard (example)

For a detailed introduction to the web interface see *Overview and dashboard* on page 6-19.

Guest login

With the guest login (user name: guest, password: configured by the administrator) you can protect the system from accidental changes of the configuration. A guest can only access the functions that are allowed by an administrator. For more information see *To set up user permissions for guest login* on page 6-44.

6.2 Calibration

Before the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can be used you must select a heading input setting in order to make an azimuth and cable calibration. The azimuth calibration is required in order to determine the offset of the ADU zero direction to the bow-to-stern line of the ship. This procedure is fully automatic. The satellite data for calibration can be entered directly on the calibration page or you can define a Service profile to be used for the azimuth calibration. A cable calibration is required in order to record the cable characteristics of the antenna cable which is used in the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku fixed gain feature. See *Fixed TX gain principle* on page 6-18 for more information. After the calibration you create the satellite and VSAT modem profiles you want to use during normal operation, and you can set up blocking zones for the specific installation.

Important | You must log in as an administrator to do a calibration. See *Administration* on page 6-43.

The following sections describe the steps for a successful calibration:

- *Heading mode and position mode*
- *Azimuth calibration*
- *To set up a service profile for calibration*
- *Cable calibration*
- *Operation in gyro-free mode*
- *Flow chart for calibration (user controlled)*
- *To make a line up procedure*
- *Fixed TX gain principle*

6.2.1 Heading mode and position mode

You must set the heading mode and the position mode before you start the calibration procedure.

Note | If you change the heading settings from external to fixed or vice versa you must make a new azimuth calibration.

1. Go to the page **SETTINGS > Navigation**.

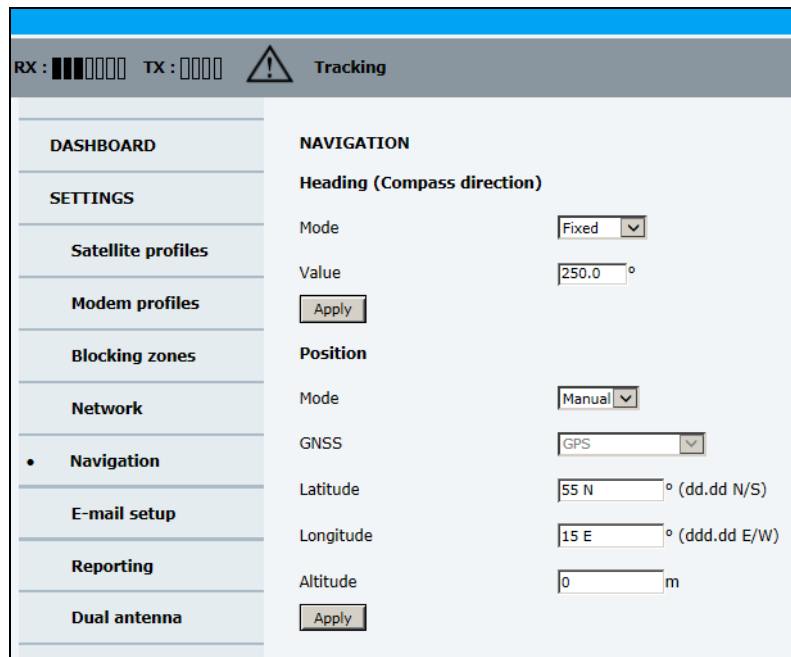


Figure 6-3: Web interface: SETTINGS, Navigation (Heading and Position) (example)

2. Select the desired heading input.

Heading mode	Description
External	Heading input from the vessel's gyro compass (default). If there is no heading input due to failure, alarms are raised and the antenna continues in gyro-free mode. When heading input is available again and a new acquisition is made, alarms are cleared. See also <i>Operation in gyro-free mode</i> on page 6-13.
Fixed	Use this setting for making an azimuth and cable calibration if there is no input from the vessel's gyro compass and for permanent installations like remote areas or oil rigs, or during training and test. For Fixed , enter the vessel heading in degrees Important: Fixed heading is not allowed for sailing vessels!
None	Important: You must make an azimuth and cable calibration with Fixed before you can use this setting. This is required in order to be able to use blocking zones. After a successful azimuth and cable calibration you must change the heading input setting from Fixed to None. Select this setting after a successful azimuth calibration with Fixed heading if the system does not have input from the vessel's gyro compass. See also <i>Operation in gyro-free mode</i> on page 6-13.

Table 6-1: Heading mode options

3. Click **Apply**.

4. Select the desired position mode.

Position mode	Description
Mode	Select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GNSS (default) • Manual
GNSS	Select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GPS (default) • BEIDOU • GPS + BEIDOU • GLONASS • GPS + GLONASS
Latitude, Longitude, Altitude	Enter the values if you have set the Position Mode to Manual .

Table 6-2: Position mode options

5. Click **Apply**.

Acquisition process and search pattern

With heading input or fixed heading

1. The antenna starts the acquisition, searches for 10 seconds at the expected position. If RX lock is detected the antenna goes to Tracking.
2. If no RX lock is detected, a box search pattern is started and the positions where RF power can be received are stored.

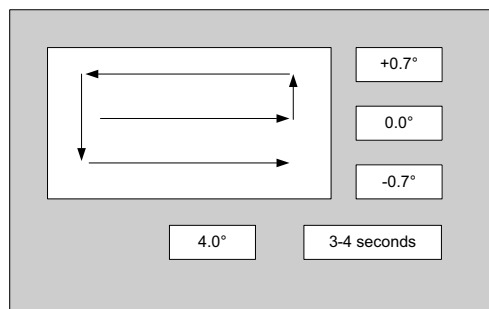


Figure 6-4: Acquisition, search pattern

3. The antenna checks each stored position for up to 10 seconds. If RX lock is detected for more than 20% of the time, the antenna goes to Tracking.

With heading input or fixed heading, Inclined Orbit Satellite

1. The antenna starts the acquisition, searches for 10 seconds at the expected position. If RX lock is detected the antenna goes to Tracking.

- If no RX lock is detected, a box search pattern is started and the positions where RF power can be received are stored.

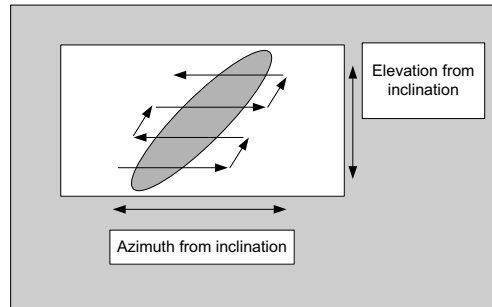


Figure 6-5: Acquisition, search pattern for inclined orbit

- The antenna checks each stored position for up to 10 seconds. If RX lock is detected for more than 20% of the time, the antenna goes to Tracking.

Without heading input and not fixed heading (Gyro-free)

- A box search pattern is started and the positions with reception of RF power are checked for up to 10 seconds. If RX lock is detected for more than 20% of the time, the antenna goes to Tracking.

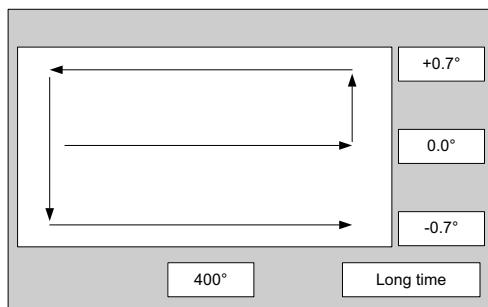


Figure 6-6: Acquisition, search pattern in gyro-free mode

Acquisition times

Activity/Inclination	0°	1°	2°	3°	4°
Initial search	10 s	10 s	10 s	10 s	10 s
Scan box pattern	5 s	10 s	15 s	25 s	30 s
Validate result (10 s per result)	10 - 30 s	10 - 30 s	10 - 30 s	10 - 30 s	10 - 30 s
Max. total time	25 - 45 s	30 - 50 s	35 - 55 s	45 - 65 s	50 - 70 s

Table 6-3: Acquisition time

6.2.2 Azimuth calibration

Azimuth calibration is done toward a satellite of a known position. After finding the satellite, the system can calculate the azimuth offset of the ADU installation. The satellite and transponder properties for the calibration can be selected from a list of service profiles or supplied manually.

Note If the target satellite is in inclined orbit, the elevation range is extended accordingly.

You can make an azimuth calibration in the following ways:

- *Automatic azimuth calibration with an active satellite profile*
- *Azimuth calibration (user controlled)*
- *Azimuth calibration with a service profile*

Automatic azimuth calibration with an active satellite profile

You can enable automatic azimuth calibration, even if there is no line of sight to an azimuth calibration satellite from the place of installation. To be able to use this feature you must have made a valid satellite profile and have activated it. When the vessel leaves the harbour and gets line of sight to the satellite, the system automatically finds and tracks the satellite and makes the azimuth calibration. After a successful azimuth calibration the ACU will automatically disable the setting **Azimuth calibration (active satellite profile)** on the page **SERVICE > Calibration**.

To enable automatic azimuth calibration, do as follows:

1. Create a modem profile, see *Modem profiles* on page 6-26.
2. Create a satellite profile, see *Satellite profiles* on page 6-29.
3. Click **SETTINGS** and **Activate** the satellite profile.

4. Click **SERVICE > Calibration**.

RX : [] [] [] [] [] [] TX : [] [] [] [] Tracking

SERVICE

- Upload
- **Calibration**
- Modem
- Line up
- Dual antenna mode
- Antenna data
- Self test

ADMINISTRATION

HELPDESK

SITE MAP

CALIBRATION

Azimuth calibration result

Azimuth relative position 171.3°

Azimuth calibration value 1.8°

Azimuth calibration (active satellite profile)

Enable

Apply

Azimuth calibration (user controlled)

Status Calibration ready

Result --

Satellite Please select.. ▾

Longitude 0 °

Pol skew 0 °

Polarisation Horizontal ▾

LNB Co-pol ▾

Tracking frequency 0 GHz

Satellite identifier NID ▾

Symbol rate 0 MS/s

NID 0

Start Cancel

TX cable calibration

Type Cable calibration User defined system gain Disabled

Status Calibration ready

Result --

Attenuator margin 21.50 dB

Start Cancel

Figure 6-7: Web interface: SERVICE, Calibration

5. Select **Enable** in the section **Azimuth calibration (active satellite profile)**.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Switch on the modem.

Azimuth calibration (user controlled)

To make a user-controlled azimuth calibration, do as follows:

1. On the page **SERVICE > Calibration**, in the Satellite drop down list select **User defined**.

Note Check that the satellite transponder is visible from the location of the installation and that it is at an elevation angle between 5 and 70 degrees.

2. Type in the longitude and polarization skew of the satellite. The polarization skew is provided by the satellite operator, it is typically 0 degrees. For satellite data see *DVB-S satellites* on page G-1, www.lyngsat.com.

Important The calibration function is not able to verify the correctness or precision of the supplied longitude. It is therefore important to supply the correct longitude including the first decimal.

3. Select the polarization of a transponder and type in its frequency and symbol rate.
4. Select which satellite identifier to use for identification of the signal.

Satellite identifier	NID value	Description
NID	0	Satellite identifier is not used.
NID	1–65535	Supplied NID is matched against Network ID broadcast by the satellite.
Orbital position	n.a.	Supplied longitude is matched with orbital position broadcast by satellite. Not all service providers broadcast the orbital position.

Table 6-4: Satellite identifier and NID values

5. Click **Start** and wait typically 5 minutes for the calibration to finish. A progress bar is shown during calibration and a message is displayed when the calibration has completed. In case of failure, see the table in the following section for a description of error codes during calibration.

Important It is strongly recommended to verify the result of a calibration performed with user defined data. This can be done by making a new calibration on a different satellite and verify that the resulting Azimuth calibration value differs less than one degree.

The following table shows the error codes that might be displayed during a calibration.

Error code	Explanation
1	The elevation of the selected satellite is too low. Select another satellite.
2	The elevation of the selected satellite is too high. Select another satellite.

Table 6-5: Possible error codes during calibration

Error code	Explanation
4	The calibration values could not be saved. Possibly due to defective hardware.
5	The antenna could not point with sufficient precision. Check that the antenna is mounted in a stable way. Other possible causes might be electrical or mechanical faults.
6	No signal received. Check that there is free line of sight. Try again or try with another satellite.
7	RF setup error, e.g. missing or invalid RX frequency.
8	Invalid satellite, e.g. satellite not visible.

Table 6-5: Possible error codes during calibration (Continued)

Azimuth calibration with a service profile

1. Click **SERVICE > Calibration**.
2. Select the service profile in the drop down list **Satellite**. All profiles with the VSAT modem **Service & Calibration** are displayed in the list. If there is no profile in the list see *To set up a service profile for calibration* on page 6-11.
3. Click **Start** in the section **Azimuth calibration** and wait typically 5 minutes for the calibration to finish. After finished calibration a message with the result of the calibration is displayed.

6.2.3 To set up a service profile for calibration

If you do not want to use the automatic azimuth calibration or if you want to enter the satellite parameters directly on the calibration page, use this calibration method. To prepare for calibration you can set up a service profile for calibration.

To setup a service profile do as follows:

1. Open your Internet browser and enter the IP address of the ACU. The default IP address is **http://192.168.0.1**.
2. Select **SETTINGS > Satellite profiles > New entry**. Enter the name of the satellite profile for calibration (a name of your own choice).
3. Select the modem profile **Service & Calibration** from the drop-down list.

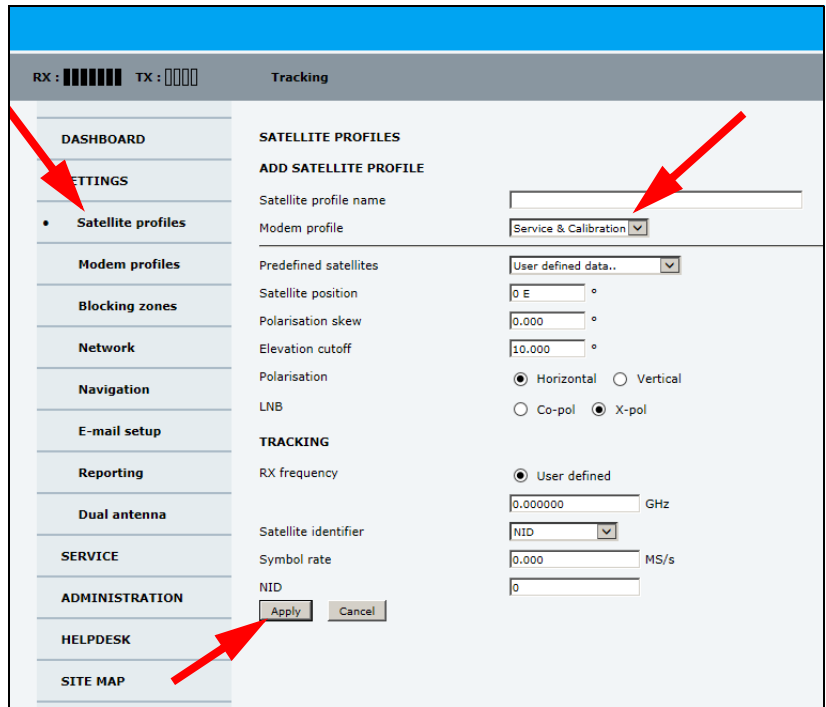


Figure 6-8: Service profile for calibration

4. Enter the data for the satellite that you want to use as a calibration reference. You can enter the satellite data manually or select a satellite from the list of predefined satellites (Eutelsat). For satellite information see *DVB-S satellites* on page G-1 or www.lyngsat.com.

Note the following calibration requirements:

Satellite requirements for successful calibration	
Elevation	Elevation angle: 5 – 70 degrees Not allowed for calibration: Inclined orbit.
System encryption	DVB-S or DVB-S2
Polarization	Horizontal or vertical polarization. Not allowed: Left-hand circular (L) or right-hand circular (R).
Symbol rate	The DVB symbol rate must be >5 Ms/s.
NID	Preferably a unique NID (ONID). An azimuth calibration without NID can be useful in regions where the satellite operators do not broadcast NID (US, China, Australia etc.). For NID=0 the NID is not used when checking the satellite link.

Table 6-6: Satellite requirements for elevation and carrier

Elevation cutoff: Not relevant for calibration.

LNB: Co-pol or X-pol, use this for test if both the LNBS and RX cables function properly in case of issues with the reception of a signal. The polarization must remain the same as

stated for the transponder used for the azimuth calibration. The antenna will just turn the polarization motor 90 degrees to use the other LNB to receive the same signal.

5. Click **Apply** to save the settings for the service profile for calibration. The system is ready for the azimuth and cable calibration.

6.2.4 Cable calibration

You must make a cable calibration.

1. Select **SERVICE > Calibration**.

TX cable calibration	
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Cable calibration <input type="radio"/> User defined system gain <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Status	Calibration ready
Result	--
Attenuator margin	21.50 dB
<input type="button" value="Start"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Figure 6-9: Web interface: SERVICE, Calibration, TX cable calibration

2. In the section **TX cable calibration**, select the **Type**:
 - **Cable calibration**: The system will make a complete cable calibration (recommended).
 - **User defined system gain**: Allows you to set a fixed gain. Note that this may decrease the maximum allowed cable length.
 - **Disabled**: The gain is set at a maximum and no cable calibration is made. It is up to the modem to make the necessary adjustments.
3. Click **Start** in the section **TX cable calibration**.
4. Wait typically for 2 minutes for the calibration to finish. A message is displayed when the calibration has been completed successfully. This screen shows how much attenuation margin is left for the antenna cable. This indicates whether the antenna cable and connectors are in good condition and well crimped.

It is recommended to make a cable calibration when servicing the system to check if the antenna cable is still in good order. If the attenuator margin changes by 2 dB or more after a cable calibration, it is recommended to do a P1dB compression measurement to verify that the VSAT modem configuration is correct.

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku is calibrated now. If the calibration failed there will be a message on the calibration screen.

Important For operation when input from the vessel's gyro compass is not available: Change the heading input setting from **Fixed** to **None** at **Heading – Input**.
Fixed heading is not allowed for sailing vessels!

6.2.5 Operation in gyro-free mode

Heading input: none

If input from a gyro compass is not available, information from the GPS position is used when searching for a satellite.

When the antenna does not have ship heading input from the vessel's gyro compass, the azimuth direction of the satellite is not known. In this case the antenna will start a 360 degrees sky scan and scan until it finds a satellite. The satellite search time to find the satellite and start tracking is therefore raised considerably. If the ship is on a steady course and sails at a speed over ground above 5 kn, the system can use an estimated heading from the current GPS position. This will reduce the search time, but it will still be a longer search time than with heading input.

This mode can be difficult for inclined orbit satellites and elevations <5 and >70 degrees, see the following sections for details.

If a system loses the signal from the satellite, i.e. due to blockage, and the duration of signal loss is longer than approximately 1 minute, a system without heading input must do a new sky scan to find the satellite when the antenna is out of blockage.

Inclined orbit satellites

If the wanted satellite is an inclined orbit satellite, the system does not have any information of the satellite latitude position but only information about inclination. This means longer search times, depending on the maximum inclination. With the increased search time for a system without heading input the search time can be so long that it will be more or less useless in practice.

Tracking for satellite elevation between 5 and 75 degrees

When the system has found the satellite and is in pointing mode, the performance of a system with heading input and a system without heading input will be very similar. Note that this is only the case for a satellite elevation range from 5 to 75 degrees.

If the satellite is an inclined orbit satellite, the missing heading information introduces a polarization error depending on the satellite elevation and the inclination. Normally it is required that the polarization is controlled within 1 degree towards the satellite. This gives the following limit for use of inclined orbit satellites (a purely physical limit), and all systems without heading input have this limit.

Satellite elevation	Max allowed inclination
<20	2.5
<50	0.7
<70	0.3
≤75	0

Table 6-7: Satellite elevation and max. allowed inclination

Tracking for satellite elevation above 75 degrees

It is not possible to use a system without heading input from the vessel's gyro compass with satellites at an elevation of higher than 75 degrees because the system will not have the required polarization accuracy of the transmitted signal.

6.2.6 Flow chart for calibration (user controlled)

The following flow chart gives an example of the steps in a calibration for the user controlled azimuth calibration.

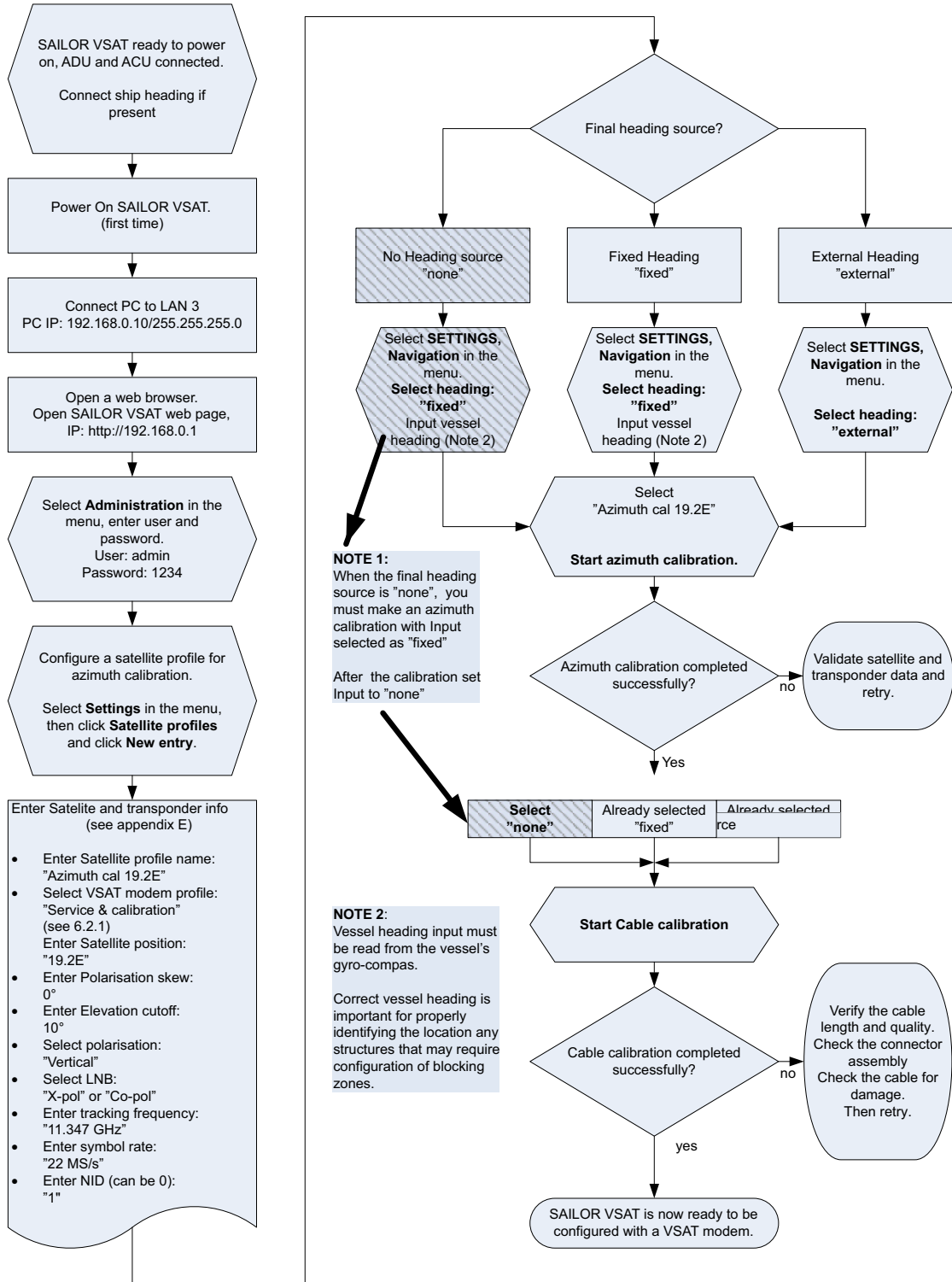


Figure 6-10: Example of a calibration (user controlled) – step by step

6.2.7 To make a line up procedure

Note | The ship must not move during the line-up procedure.

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku has been tested at the factory and online on a live satellite link to calibrate the TX polarization unit. You can fine-tune the TX polarization by doing a line up as described below. To do the line up, do as follows:

1. Open your Internet browser and enter the IP address of the ACU. The default IP address is <http://192.168.0.1>.
2. Create a VSAT modem profile and a satellite profile using the previously created VSAT modem profile (See *To set up a service profile for calibration* on page 6-11).
3. Go to the page **SERVICE > Line up**. As soon as the antenna is in tracking mode and points to the satellite, the text next to **Status** shows: **Please wait. Improving tracking**. This may take up to 2 minutes.
4. Wait until the text shows: **Ready for lineup**.

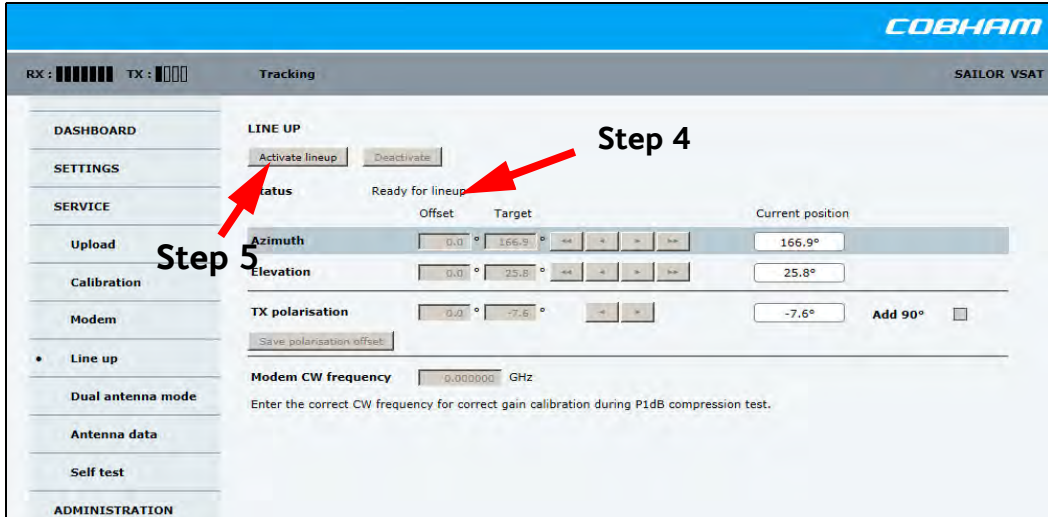


Figure 6-11: Web interface: SERVICE, Line up: Ready for activation

5. Click the button **Activate lineup** and wait until the status field shows **Antenna ready**. Follow the instructions from your service provider.

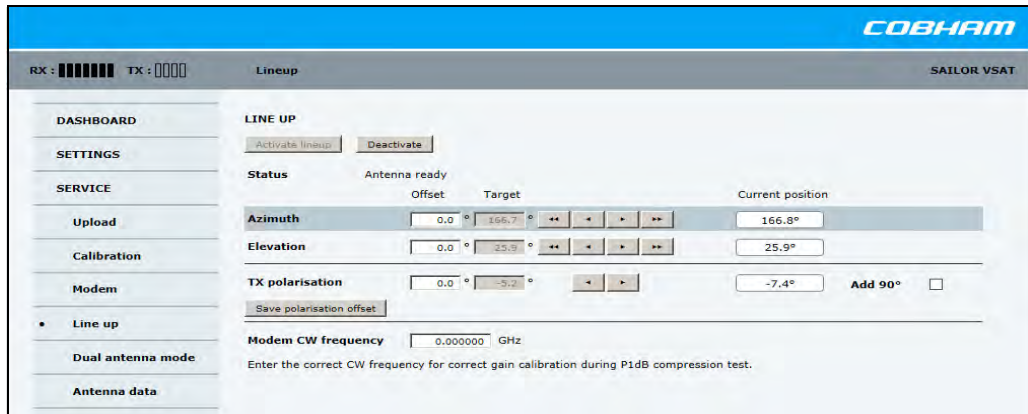


Figure 6-12: Web interface: SERVICE, Line up: Antenna ready

6. Enter the Modem CW frequency (Continuous Wave) in GHz.
This is provided by the satellite operator, typically when talking to the satellite operator on the phone before starting the line up.
7. Set the values as advised by the service provider:
 - Azimuth
 - Elevation
 - TX polarization
8. If needed, add 90 degrees to the TX polarization by selecting the field.
9. To save the TX polarization offset value, click the button **Save polarisation offset**.
10. Follow the instructions from the service provider to make a P1dB compression test (VSAT modem).
11. Click the button **Deactivate** to leave the line up procedure.

When finished, the saved value for TX polarization is visible the next time the line up procedure is selected.

6.2.8 Fixed TX gain principle

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku uses a new transmitter chain concept. After calibration it provides a fixed gain of 44 dB (48 dB for SAILOR 900 HP) from the Tx-port of the ACU to the output of the BUC. The advantages of the fixed TX gain principle are:

- Fixed TX gain over frequency and cable length
- TX gain independent of antenna cable length
- Utilization of the full BUC power over frequency
- P1dB compression point the same over frequency

When installing the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku you make a cable calibration. At that point every installation finds the same P1dB compression setting regardless of cable length. The P1dB compression point is approximately -5 dBm at the ACU Tx-port. Additionally the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system monitors the TX gain in real time according to the Tx frequency reported by the modem.

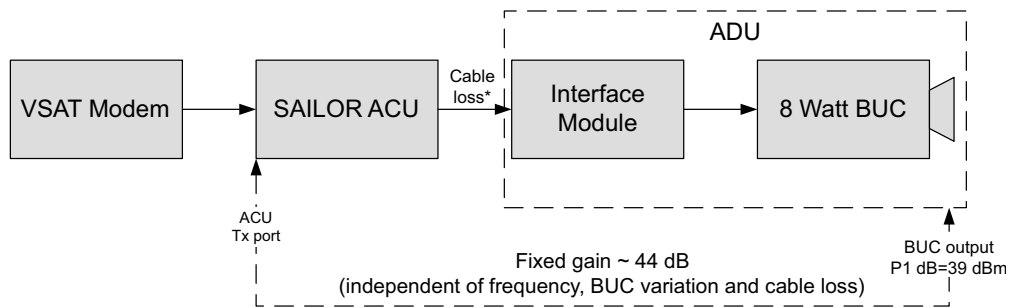


Figure 6-13: Fixed TX gain principle (SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku)

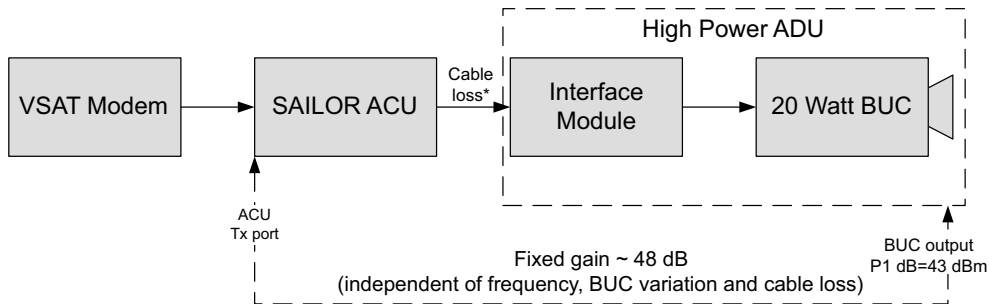


Figure 6-14: Fixed TX gain principle (SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power)

* You find the maximum cable loss at **Maximum allowed RF loss in the ADU cable** on **page 3-19**.

Example: ACU Tx-port power:
 SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku: -5 dBm > BUC output = +39 dBm (SAILOR 900), 43 dBm (SAILOR 900 HP)
 SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku HP: -5 dBm > BUC output = +39 dBm (SAILOR 900), 43 dBm (SAILOR 900 HP)

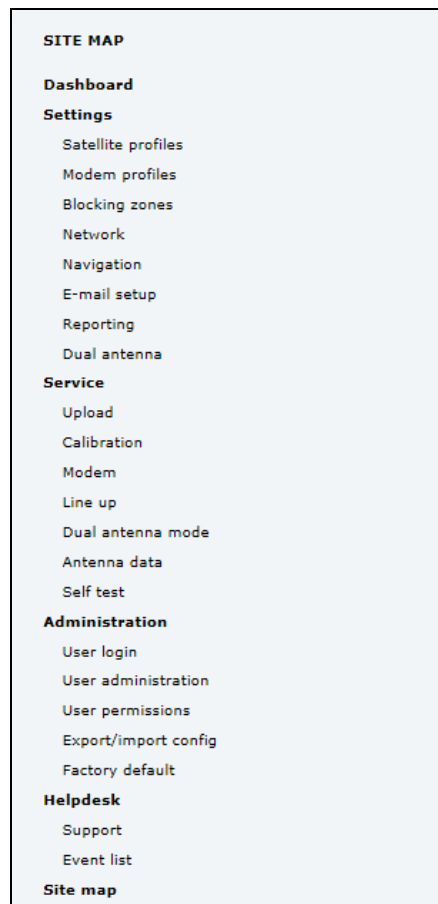
6.3 Configuration with the web interface

The following sections give detailed description of various parts of the web interface.

6.3.1 Overview and dashboard

Topics in the web interface

Use the site map to get an overview over the existing menus, submenus and topics. You can click on each menu in the site map to go directly to the page or display the respective submenu.



SITE MAP
Dashboard
Settings
Satellite profiles
Modem profiles
Blocking zones
Network
Navigation
E-mail setup
Reporting
Dual antenna
Service
Upload
Calibration
Modem
Line up
Dual antenna mode
Antenna data
Self test
Administration
User login
User administration
User permissions
Export/import config
Factory default
Helpdesk
Support
Event list
Site map

Figure 6-15: Topics in the web interface (SITE MAP)

Software version 1.62 is the version described in this chapter.

Dashboard and navigation

The Dashboard is the first screen that is displayed when the user or administrator enters the IP address of the web interface of the ACU. The Dashboard is used for viewing properties and status of the ACU and ADU. The Dashboard has the following sections:

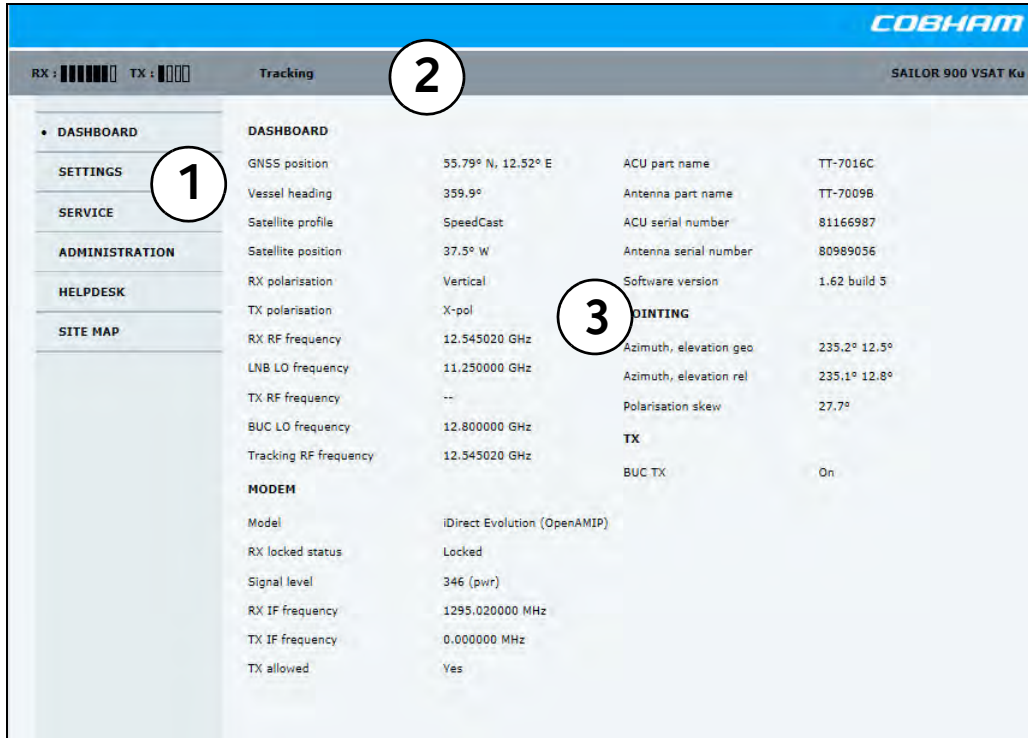


Figure 6-16: Web interface: DASHBOARD (example)

1. The navigation pane contains the menus. You can click an item in the menu to open the list of submenus or a new page in the contents section. The currently displayed menu is marked by a bullet.
2. The top bar shows the following:
 - RX signal strength bars: This shows the tracking signal strength of the antenna. The signal strength can vary during operation, depending on the current position relative to the satellite. The signal strength of the VSAT modem (if available) is shown on the **DASHBOARD** in the section **MODEM**, at **Signal level**.
 - BUC output power bars (TX): This indicates if the BUC is transmitting or not. This is a unique feature of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku antenna. A built-in power detector in the OMT developed by Cobham SATCOM makes it possible to measure the power within a time window to be able to catch short TX bursts. The power within the window is averaged and shown in the BUC output power bar graph on the DASHBOARD. Note that this indicator is an averaged signal, it is not a real-time indicator. After measuring a signal burst the bar graph falls slowly in order for the user to be able to see short TX bursts.
The BUC output power indicator is very useful during installation as the service engineer knows whether the antenna is transmitting or not and that the hub should be able to monitor the transmission. It is also very useful when doing line up with the hub as the service engineer can monitor the TX BUC output power level on the

DASHBOARD and watch when the output power approaches the P1dB compression point which is at 4 bars.

- Current status of the antenna, see *Status field in the top bar* on page 6-23.
- An icon for active events is displayed, if there are any.


Icon	Explanation
	An event is active. Click the icon to see a list of active events. The event time is UTC time. For explanations of the event messages, see <i>Event list</i> on page 8-3 and <i>Event messages – overview</i> on page I-1. Note that this icon will remain in the icon bar as long as the event is active.

Table 6-8: Web interface: Event icon

- Host name: This is shown on every page. It is useful to identify the system at remote login and in reports from the system. The host name is recommended to contain the name of the vessel. To change the host name see *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.
3. The contents section shows the page selected in the navigation pane. This section is used for viewing or changing settings, or for performing actions. For a description of the individual items in the contents section see *Sections on the Dashboard* on page 6-24.

To navigate the web interface

- **To expand a menu**, click the menu in the navigation pane.
- **To access status and settings**, click the relevant subject in the navigation pane or click the relevant icon in the icon bar. The status or settings are displayed in the contents section.
- **To get an overview over the submenus available**, click **SITE MAP** in the navigation pane. Click on items in the site map to go directly to the relevant location.

Note You can give access to some configuration settings for users that are not administrators. For information see *To set up user permissions for guest login* on page 6-44.

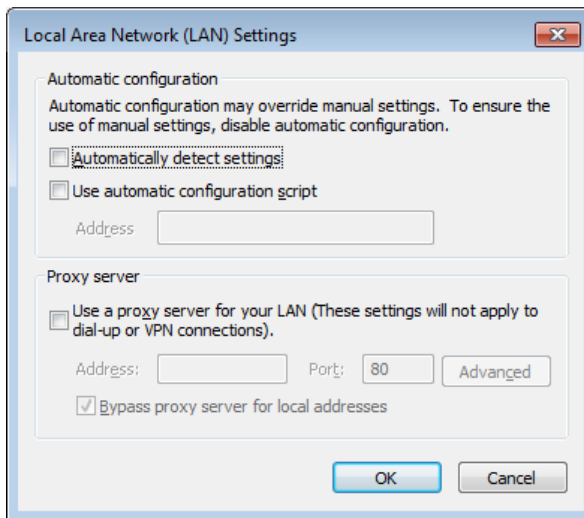
Proxy server settings in your browser

If you are connecting your computer using a LAN or WLAN interface, the **Proxy server** settings in your browser must be disabled before accessing the web interface. Most browsers support disabling of the Proxy server settings for one specific IP address, so you can disable Proxy server settings for the web interface only, if you wish. Consult your browser help for information.

To disable the use of a Proxy server completely, do as follows:

Note The following description is for **Microsoft Internet Explorer**. If you are using a different browser, the procedure may be different.

1. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, select **Tools > Internet Options > Connections > LAN Settings**.



2. Clear the box labeled **Use a proxy server for your LAN**.
3. Click **OK**.

When the proxy server settings are disabled, close and restart your browser. You may need to change this setting back on return to your Internet connection.

To connect a PC

To connect your PC to the ACU do as follows:

1. Connect a PC to LAN interface 3 (Service port, standard Ethernet) of the ACU or to the front LAN connector of the ACU. If you want to use another LAN port than LAN 3 you must configure it according to your network requirements. For information how to configure the LAN connectors see *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.
2. Open your Internet browser and enter the IP address of the ACU. The default IP address is **http://192.168.0.1**.

Status field in the top bar

The top bar shows the current status of the antenna. Examples are:

- **Not ready** (waiting for input from GNSS, e.g. GPS)
- **Antenna initializing**
- **Antenna SW upload**
- **Antenna POST error**
- **XIM data error**
- **Unrecoverable XIM data error**
- **System upgrade**
- **Antenna POST pending**
- **Antenna POST**
- **Safe Mode** (error, followed by an error description)
- **Service switch** (service switch in ADU activated)
- **Ready** (waiting for data from the modem or no satellite profile selected)
- **Pointing antenna** (locating the satellite)
- **Acquiring signal** (acquiring the satellite signal)
- **Tracking** (tracks the current satellite)
- **Lineup** (line up is activated)
- **Azimuth calibration**
- **TX cable calibration**
- **Test**
- **Not ready** (waiting for input from GNSS, e.g. GPS)
- **Not ready: Initializing**
- **Not ready: Need pos**
- **Blocking zone** (antenna is pointing into a blocking zone)
- **No TX zone** (antenna is pointing into a no TX zone; TX is off)

Sections on the Dashboard

DASHBOARD	Description
GNSS position	Current position of the vessel, reported by the GNSS module
Vessel heading	Ship's heading in degrees with reference to North, provided by the ship's gyro.
Satellite profile	Name of the currently active satellite profile.
Satellite position	Position of the satellite selected in Satellite profile.
RX polarisation	Horizontal or vertical.
TX polarisation ^a	Co-pol or X-pol, auto-selected by VSAT modem
RX RF frequency ^a	Ku band receiving frequency, auto-selected by VSAT modem
LNB Lo frequency ^a	Auto-selected by VSAT modem
TX RF frequency ^a	Auto-selected by VSAT modem
BUC Lo frequency	12.8 GHz (system parameter)
Tracking RF frequency	Current RF tracking frequency.
ACU part name, Antenna part name, ACU serial number, Antenna serial number, Software version	Part names, serial numbers for ACU and ADU, software version of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.

Table 6-9: Web interface, DASHBOARD, SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku parameters

a. Can be changed when using a generic modem profile.

MODEM	Description
Model	VSAT modem name, entered in SETTINGS > Modem profiles .
RX locked status	Shows whether or not the system has locked to the incoming signal.
Signal level	Current input signal level from the VSAT modem. iDirect openAMIP modem: 0-500(pwr), delivered by the connected modem. For values <250 the antenna searches for a new signal. Other modem: Signal level in dB.

Table 6-10: Web interface, DASHBOARD, VSAT MODEM parameter

MODEM	Description
RX IF frequency	Read out from VMU.
TX IF frequency	Read out from VMU.
TX allowed	On or Off. Indicates if the VSAT modem supplies the 10 MHz reference signal on its TX connector (On) and if an iDirect OpenAMIP modem indicates modem Locked and Tx ON in the OpenAMIP message L (L 1 1).

Table 6-10: Web interface, DASHBOARD, VSAT MODEM parameter (Continued)

POINTING	Description
Azimuth, elevation geo	Current value for geographic azimuth and elevation.
Azimuth, elevation rel	Current value for relative azimuth and elevation.
Polarisation skew	Current value for polarization skew.

Table 6-11: Web interface, DASHBOARD, POINTING parameter

TX	Description
BUC TX	On or Off. Shows if the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku has enabled the BUC or not. It is the same TX ON/TX OFF as shown in the display of the ACU, see <i>ACU display and keypad</i> on page 6-48.

Table 6-12: Web interface, DASHBOARD, TX parameter

DUAL ANTENNA	Description
DUAL ANTENNA MASTER or DUAL ANTENNA SLAVE	This is the Dashboard for the master or the slave antenna. See also <i>Configuration tasks</i> on page B-5.
Status	Shows the current status for the antenna (Master or Slave)
Show master dashboard or Show slave dashboard	Click here to switch to the dashboard of the other antenna in the dual antenna system.

Table 6-13: Web interface, DASHBOARD, dual antenna (option)

BUC TX information

The BUC TX information is displayed on the **DASHBOARD** in the section **TX. BUC TX** indicates if the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku has enabled the BUC or not. It can show **On** or **Off**.

This information is also shown in the display of the ACU as TX ON or TX OFF. **BUC TX On** is shown when the following conditions are met:

- The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku must sense the 10 MHz Tx reference signal from the connected VSAT modem.
- The VSAT modem must have Rx lock.
- The antenna must point correctly to the satellite.
- The antenna must be in tracking mode.

6.3.2 Modem profiles and satellite profiles

Modem profiles

On the page **Modem profiles** you create, edit or delete VSAT modem profiles. The supported modem profiles are listed in the drop-down list **Modem**. A modem profile contains all modem settings that are necessary for a successful connection to the satellite. The data you have to fill in are provided by your VSAT service and modem provider. You must add at least one modem profile.

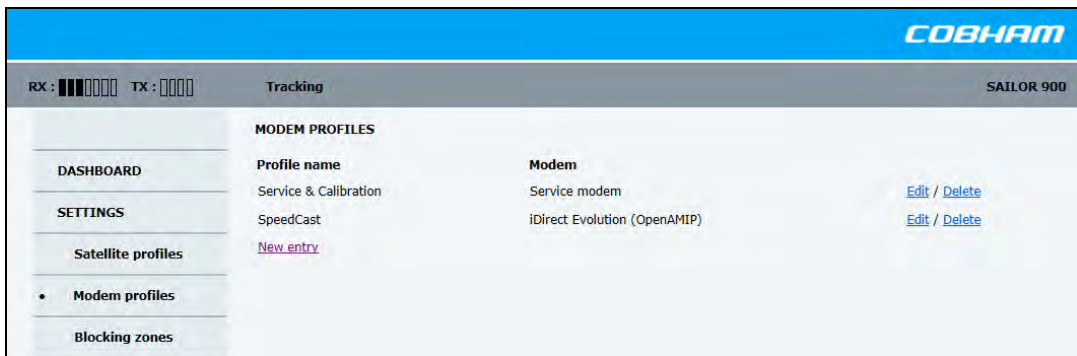


Figure 6-17: Web interface: SETTINGS, Modem profiles — list (example)

To add or edit a modem profile, do as follows:

1. Go to **SETTINGS > Modem profiles** and click **New entry** or **Edit**. The supported modem profiles are listed in the drop-down list **VSAT modem profile**.

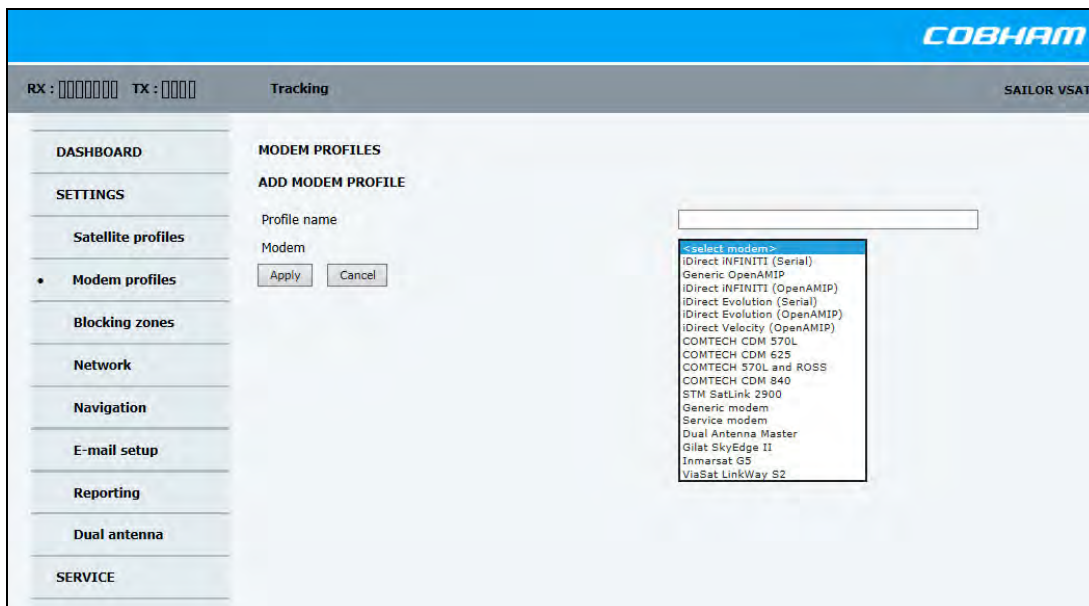


Figure 6-18: Web interface: SETTINGS, Modem profile – supported modems

2. Fill in a VSAT modem profile name of your own choice.
3. Select one of the supported modems from the drop down list. Once you have selected a modem, entry fields required for this modem are displayed.
Generic modem: If you have a modem that is not included in the list, select the generic modem.
4. Fill in or edit the data provided by your VSAT service provider.
The following configuration data may be needed by the modem:

Parameter	Description
IP address	Enter the IP address of the modem (for dual antenna systems: the IP address of the master ACU)
Port	Enter the modem IP port number.
VSAT modem root password	iDirect serial login. Default: P@55w0rd!
VSAT modem user password	iDirect serial login. Default: iDirect
Baud rate	Select the baud rate for the modem communication or modem GPS input.
GPS output	Disable GPS output or select the appropriate baud rate.
10 MHz reference	Select the 10 MHz reference source for the BUC/LNBs. Recommended settings: VMU-TX: STM Satlink 2900, Gilat SkyEdge II, COMTECH, iDirect modems, ACU Internal: service modem, InmarsatG5

Table 6-14: Modem configuration data

Parameter	Description
RSSI lock type	Select None (no RX lock), High (positive voltage) or Low (negative voltage)
RSSI lock level	Enter the voltage level for the modem RX lock signal. Range: 0 - 14000 mV (-14 VDC to+ 14 VDC)

Table 6-14: Modem configuration data (Continued)

Important

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can work using the Rx or Tx 10 MHz reference signals provided by the modem or its own built-in 10 MHz reference signal. It is recommended to use the Tx 10 MHz reference signal from the modem.

For modems communicating via Ethernet: Make sure that you have entered the correct IP address also for the LAN connector that is used for the modem, see *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.

- Click **Apply** to add the new profile to the list of VSAT modem profiles or to accept the edits.

Modem access: If the modem is connected via Ethernet and supports the available access types, you can access the modem via the ACU, for details, see *Modem configuration* on page 8-9.

For a generic modem you enter all parameters in the satellite profile that has the modem profile with the generic modem.

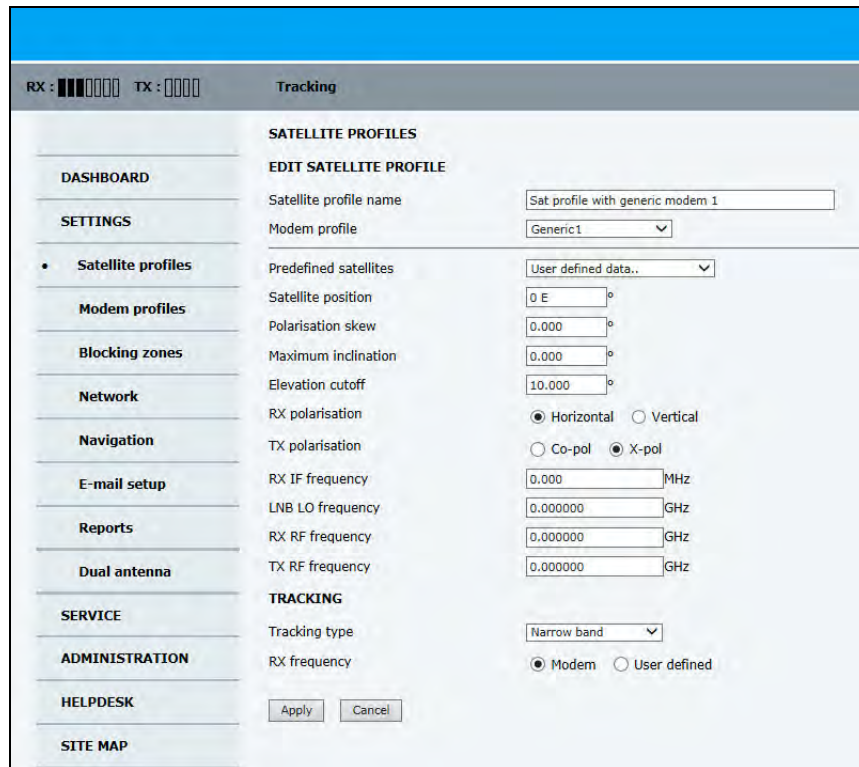


Figure 6-19: Satellite profile with generic modem

Satellite profiles

On the page **Satellite profiles** you add, edit and delete satellite profiles. A satellite profile contains all settings that are necessary for a successful connection to the satellite, including a VSAT modem profile. Most of the data you have to fill in are provided by your VSAT service provider. Each satellite profile has one assigned modem profile. You must activate one satellite profile.

Note You must add at least one modem profile before you can add a satellite profile. See *Modem profiles* on page 6-26.

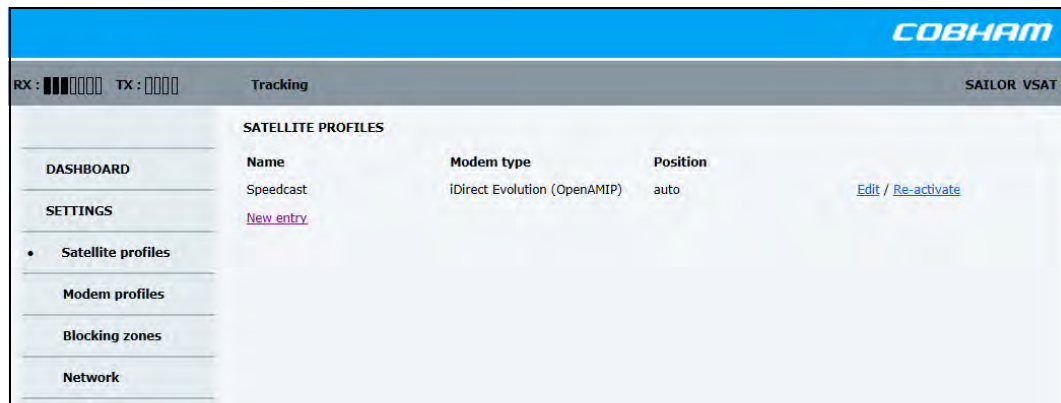


Figure 6-20: Web interface: SETTINGS - list of satellite profiles (example)

To add or edit a satellite profile, do as follows:

1. Go to **SETTINGS** or **Satellite profiles** and click **Edit** or **New entry**.

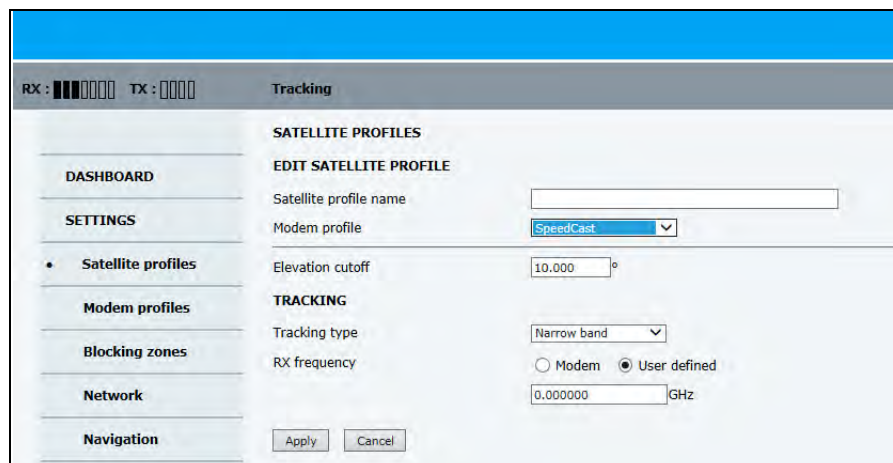


Figure 6-21: Web interface: SETTINGS, Satellite profiles — new entry (example)

2. Enter or edit the Satellite profile name.

Note Tip: Assign a name containing the location where the Satellite profile is to be used (e.g. *Gulf of Mexico* or *North Sea*) and, if possible, the provider.

3. Select a modem profile. The page automatically displays the parameters available for the selected modem profile.
For instruction how to add a VSAT modem profile see *Modem profiles* on page 6-26.

4. Enter the data for the satellite that you want to use. For satellite data see *DVB-S satellites* on page G-1 or www.lyngsat.com.
5. Polarisation skew: See documents from VSAT provider.
6. At Elevation cutoff enter the minimum elevation angle for the antenna to function in accordance with ETSI (ETSI EN 302 340) and FCC (FCC §25.205) regulations.
 - **FCC (FCC §25.205):** 5 degrees
 - **ETSI (ETSI EN 302 340):** The minimum elevation angle depends on the Tx bandwidth and the nominal power of the VSAT modem, see the tables below.
 (one for SAILOR 900 and one for SAILOR 900 HP)

Bandwidth	Nominal modem power								
Modem Power [dBm]	-22	-20	-18	-16	-14	-12	-10	-8	-6
Eirp@14.25 J ^a GHz [dBm]	63.4	65.4	67.4	69.4	71.4	73.4	75.4	77.4	79.4
64 kHz	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	10°	12°
128 kHz	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	10°	12°
256 kHz	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	10°	12°
512 kHz	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	10°	12°
1024 kHz	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	10°	12°
2048 kHz	3°	3°	3°	4°	5°	5°	6°	8°	9°
4096 kHz	3°	3°	3°	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°	7°
8192 kHz	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	4°	5°	5°
16384 kHz	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	4°	4°
32768 kHz	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°	3°

Table 6-15: SAILOR 900: Elevation cutoff (in degrees) versus VSAT modem bandwidth and power
 a. Eirp = Fixed system gain 44 dB + antenna gain @ 14.25 GHz 41.4 dB + modem power

Bandwidth	Nominal modem power								
Modem Power [dBm]	-16	-14	-12	-10	-8	-6	-4	-2	0
Eirp@14.25 GHz [dBm] ^a	69.1	71.1	73.1	75.1	77.1	79.1	81.1	83.1	85.1
64kHz-1MHz	6°	7°	8°	9°	11°	13°	16°	19°	22°
2048 kHz	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	10°	12°	14°	17°

Table 6-16: SAILOR 900HP: Elevation cutoff (in degrees) versus VSAT modem bandwidth and power

Bandwidth	Nominal modem power								
	3°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	9°	11°	13°
4096 kHz	3°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	9°	11°	13°
8192 kHz	3°	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	10°
16384 kHz	2°	2°	3°	3°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°
32768 kHz	2°	2°	2°	3°	3°	4°	4°	5°	6°

Table 6-16: SAILOR 900HP: Elevation cutoff (in degrees) versus VSAT modem bandwidth and power
 a. Eirp = Fixed system gain 48 dB + antenna gain @ 14.25 GHz 41.1 dB + modem power.

7. Click **Apply** to save the settings for the satellite profile.

6.3.3 To set up blocking zones (RX and TX)

You can define blocking zones, i.e. **No TX** and RX zones by entering azimuth and elevation angles for each blocking zone. The system’s blocking map is built up over some weeks and shows where the actual blocking zones are. This is useful if the antenna loses the signal frequently and you might want to check whether the blocking zones are set up correctly. To enable a blocking zone and display it on the blocking map you must select Active. For more information about the blocking map see *Optimization of the blocking zones* on page 6-33.

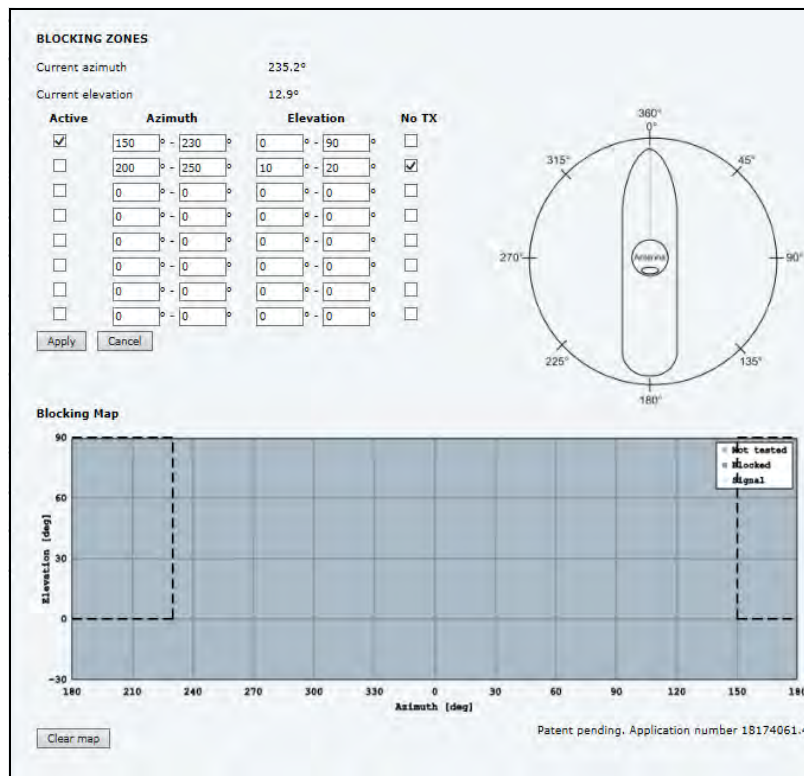


Figure 6-22: Web interface: SETTINGS, Blocking zones — azimuth, elevation and blocking map

To set up a blocking zone, do as follows:

1. Select **SETTINGS > Blocking zones**.

2. Select **Active** to enable the blocking zone and display it in the blocking map. A dashed line shows a blocking zone, a solid line shows a **No TX** zone.
3. Enter start and stop azimuth value in degrees for the blocking zone. Values allowed: 0 to 360 degrees. Enter clockwise.

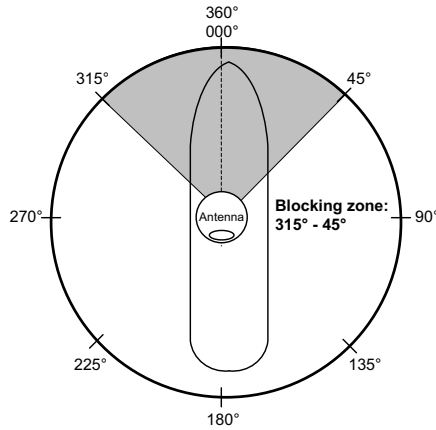


Figure 6-23: Blocking zone, example: 315 - 45 degrees

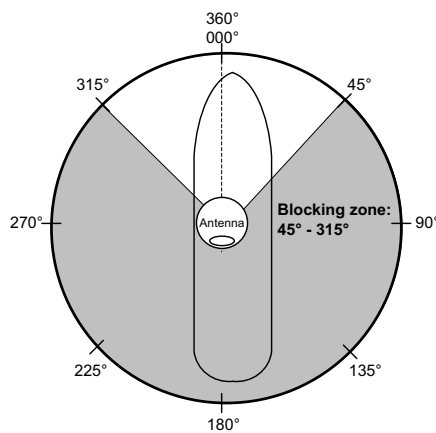


Figure 6-24: Blocking zone, example: 45 - 315 degrees

4. Enter the start and stop elevation angle for the blocking zone. If you enter nothing, there will be no blocking zone. Values allowed: -30 to 90 degrees.

Important You must enter 2 different elevation angles to have an active blocking zone.

5. Select **No TX** for zones if you don't want the system to transmit when the antenna points within this zone.

If **No TX** is not selected, the system also transmits when pointing through areas with blocking objects. The VSAT modem will shut off for TX if no signal is received.

Note

If a blocking zone is defined with TX allowed (**No TX** not checked), the modem is not informed about the blocking zone.

Modems may react differently when informed about a blocking zone, this has influence on recapturing the link. The worst case is that the modem will search the entire list of available satellites and frequencies when unaware of the blocking zone, resulting in prolonged down times until the link is recaptured.

For optimum performance it is recommended to check **No TX**.

6. Click **Apply** to save the blocking zones.

Optimization of the blocking zones

The blocking map is intended as a tool to optimise the blocking zones in order to reduce the antenna's downtime. It shows the active blocking zones and an automatic evaluation of the antenna reception. Over time the antenna can determine where the signal is blocked by structures on the ship. The blocking map helps you to set more accurate blocking zones.

To enable a blocking zone and display it on the blocking map you must select Active. The re-defined zones will show immediately on the map.

The antenna updates the blocking map every 12 hours, showing whether the antenna has been in a blocking zone (dark gray) or has received a signal (white). After a voyage of days, weeks, months the blocking map will display where the blocking zones are on the vessel (dark gray). The time it takes to draw a meaningful map depends on the ship's size and motions throughout the voyage. A small ship following a school of fish will have a populated map faster than a larger tanker sailing across the Atlantic ocean.

The following figure shows a populated map.

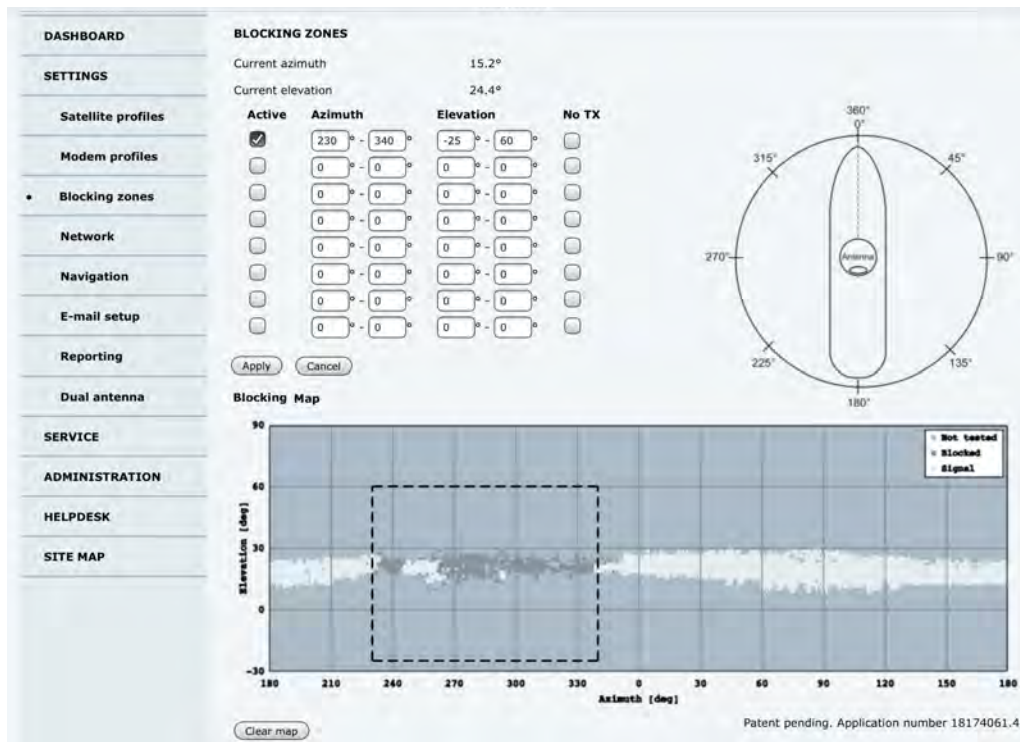


Figure 6-25: Blocking zone and blocking map (example)

6.3.4 To configure the LAN network

You can enter a host name. The host name helps identifying the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system when sending e-mail reports. The ACU has four 10/100 Mbit Ethernet ports labelled LAN port 1, 2, 3 and 4. The ports are divided in three groups, each group operating in its own network. You can set up DNS and Gateway.

To configure the LAN network go to **SETTINGS > Network**.

NETWORK

Host name

LAN Port 1: Modem

Mode

IP address

Netmask

DHCP server

DHCP server start

DHCP server end

LAN Port 2

Switched with port 1

LAN Port 3: Service

Mode

IP address

Netmask

DHCP server

DHCP server start

DHCP server end

LAN Port 4: LAN

Mode

IP address

Netmask

DNS setup

DNS source

Primary DNS

Secondary DNS

Gateway setup

Default gateway source

Default gateway

Zeroconf setup

Zeroconf source

Figure 6-26: Web interface: SETTINGS, Network (default settings)

Important Make sure that the 3 networks do not use IP address ranges that overlap.

Sections	Preferred use
<p>NETWORK</p> <p>Host name</p>	<p>The host name is used for identifying the ACU in local networks and in e-mail reports. The default host name is acu. You can change the name. Letters (a-z), digits (0-9) and hyphen (-) are allowed as legal characters.</p> <p>Note: The host name must start with a letter.</p>

Table 6-17: Setup of LAN connectors

Sections	Preferred use
LAN Port 1 + 2	LAN port 1 and 2 are switched, i.e. they share the same IP address and operate on the same network. This network is usually connected to the VSAT Modem Unit. LAN port 1 can be set to static IP (default), DHCP client or DHCP server.
LAN Port 3	LAN port 3 is dedicated as the service port. By default this port has the IP address 192.168.0.1; the current value can be displayed in the ACU display. It is recommended to connect LAN port 3 to the front port (via rear connector, see the figure <i>ACU, connector panel overview</i> on page 4-1), for access to the service port from the rack front. LAN port 3 can be set to static IP, DHCP client or DHCP server (default).
LAN Port 4	LAN port 4 can be used for connection to the LAN of the vessel or other general purpose. LAN port 4 can be set to static IP, DHCP client (default) or DHCP server.

Table 6-17: Setup of LAN connectors (Continued)

Static IP or DHCP Client

If you select **DHCP client** the network IP address and sub-net mask must be provided by a DHCP server on that network. If you select **Static IP** address you must specify a unique IP address and a sub-net mask.

DHCP Server Settings.

On LAN ports 1,3 and 4 you can choose to run a DHCP server. Select the check box **DHCP Server**. The DHCP server settings are only displayed and can be selected when the port mode is set to **Static IP**, otherwise the DHCP server settings are not shown. The DHCP start and end addresses must be on the same network as the port's static IP.

DNS setup

If you have access to a Domain Name Server (DNS) you can specify the address of the e-mail server by using the server name instead of its IP address. This can be used in **Outgoing mail server** in *E-mail setup (secure e-mail)* on page 6-37. You may statically specify the address of one or two DNS. Select the DNS source as static and fill in IP address or addresses. Alternatively, if your DHCP server can provide a DNS address and you have selected DHCP client above, then select the same LAN as your DNS source.

Gateway setup

If the ACU needs to communicate with network units outside the specified sub-nets, you must specify a default gateway (typically a router). The default gateway can be set as a static IP address. Then set the default gateway source to static and enter the IP address of

the default gateway. To remove the default gateway set it to 0.0.0.0. Alternatively, if your DHCP server is able to provide a default gateway address and you have selected DHCP client above, then select the same LAN as your default gateway source.

Zeroconf Settings

On LAN ports 1,3 and 4 you can choose to add a zeroconf address in the network (169.254.0.0). This zeroconf address will be in addition to the existing static or DHCP IP address. One port at a time can be enabled. Zeroconf allows devices to connect to a network automatically.

6.3.5 E-mail setup (secure e-mail)

To be able to send diagnostics and statistics reports using e-mail you must set up some parameters. Select SMTP to use insecure Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. Uses IP port 25. Select SMTPS to use secure Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. Uses IP port 465. Select STARTTLS to upgrade SMTP to Secure Socket Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS). Uses IP port 587. Contact your IT department for the specific data.

Figure 6-27: Web interface: SETTINGS, E-mail setup (example)

To configure the e-mail setup, do the following:

1. Go to **SETTINGS > E-mail setup**.
2. Enter the data for Outgoing mail server (SMTP) and SMTP port number.
 - SMTP: SMTP over port 25
 - SMTPS: SMTP SSL/TLS encrypted over port 465.
 - STARTTLS: SMTP with STARTTLS upgrading to encrypted over port 587.
3. Select SMTP type.
4. Select SMTP authentication. If you have selected **Credentials**, you must specify a User name and password. This data is typically provided by your IT department.

Note You must set **Outgoing mail server** to an IP address if DNS has not been set up in **DNS setup** in *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.

6.3.6 Reports, syslog and SNMP traps

The antenna can send the following reports and messages:

- *Diagnostics report*
- *Statistics report*
- *Remote syslog*
- *SNMP traps*

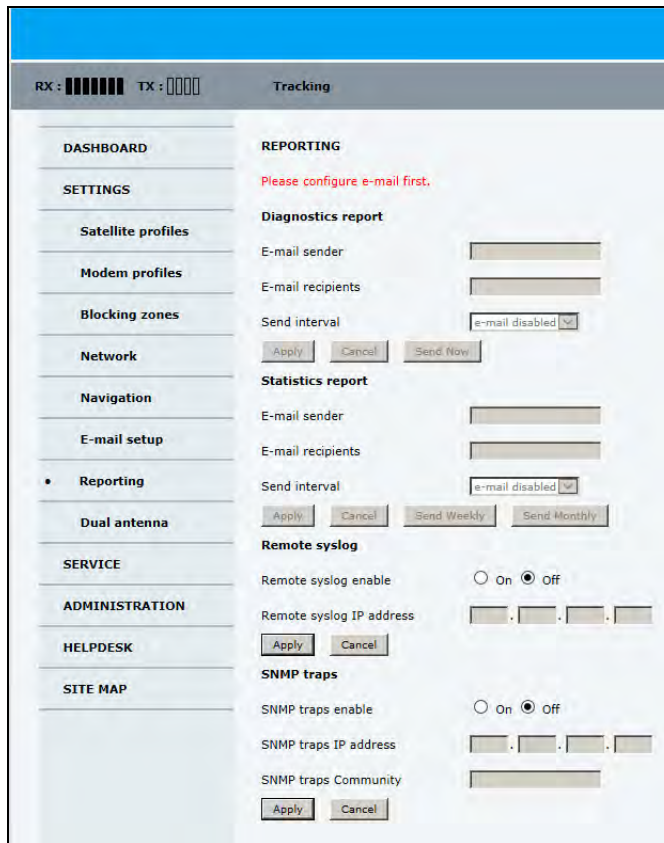


Figure 6-28: Web interface: SETTINGS, Reporting

Diagnostics report

The diagnostic report contains information from the ADU and ACU that are relevant for the service personnel during troubleshooting. The report contains data for the selected download intervals. You can send automatically generated diagnostic reports at fixed intervals.

To set up sending a statistics report, do as follows:

1. Select **SETTINGS > Reporting**.
2. In the section **DIAGNOSTICS REPORT** enter the following:
 - E-mail sender.
 - E-mail recipients (comma separated).
 - Send interval: Select **e-mail disabled**, **day** (2-minute samples), **week** (hourly samples) or **month** (hourly samples).

3. Click **Apply**.

You can generate and send the diagnostic report at any time by clicking **Send now**. You can also download a diagnostics report directly to your computer, go to the page **HELPDESK** and click **Download**. For more details see *To generate and download diagnostics or statistics reports* on page 8-3.

Statistics report

SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can send a statistics report at fixed intervals. This report contains historical information from the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku of up to 1 month. It is sent as a zipped attachment to an e-mail. The file format is a comma separated value file (csv). The report can then be processed in spreadsheet applications, e.g. Microsoft Excel.

To set up sending a statistics report, do as follows:

1. Configure e-mail first, see *E-mail setup (secure e-mail)* on page 6-37.
2. Go to **SETTINGS > Reporting**.
3. In the section **STATISTICS REPORT** enter the following:
 - Email sender.
 - Email recipients (comma separated).
 - Send interval: Select **e-mail disabled**, **day** (2-minute samples), **week** (hourly samples) or **month** (hourly samples). The report contains statistics data for the selected intervals.
4. Click **Apply**.

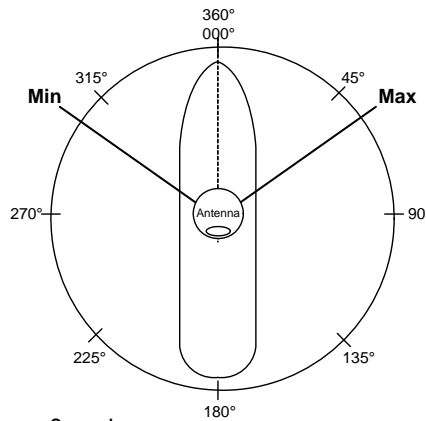
You can also send a report at any time by clicking **Send weekly** (sends a report covering the passed week) or **Send Monthly** (sends a report covering the passed month). For example, you can use **Send weekly** or **Send Monthly** to validate the e-mail setup. See also *To generate and download diagnostics or statistics reports* on page 8-3. The following parameters are recorded in the statistics report:

Parameter recorded	Description
Host name	Host name, entered in the web interface on the page SETTINGS > Network .
ACU SN	ACU serial number
ADU SN	ADU serial number
SW ver.	Software version
System type	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku

Table 6-18: Statistics report, header record

Parameter recorded	Description
UTC. (s) UTC (YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm)	UTC in seconds and date format for the data set.
RSSI.Av RSSI.Max RSSI.Min	Received signal strength (average, maximum and minimum value) for the sampling interval.
POS.Lat (degree) POS.Long (degree) POS.Valid	Latitude value of position. Longitude value of position. Fix = valid position, No Fix = invalid position.
Heading.Samp (degree) Heading.Max (degree) Heading.Min (degree) Heading.Range (+/-degree)	Ship's heading (sample, maximum and minimum value, range) for the sampling interval. See Figure 6-29: <i>Statistics — how to read data for a range.</i>
Antenna.Azi (degree) Antenna.Azi Max (degree) Antenna.Azi Min (degree) Antenna.Azi Range (+/-degree)	Current antenna azimuth (sample, maximum and minimum value, range) for the sampling interval. See Figure 6-29: <i>Statistics — how to read data for a range.</i>
Antenna.Ele (+/-degree) Antenna.Ele Max (+/-degree) Antenna.Ele Min (+/-degree)	Current antenna elevation (sample, maximum and minimum value) for the sampling interval.
Vsat.rx_lo_freq (GHz) Vsat.tx_lo_freq (GHz)	Rx frequency of VSAT modem for this record. Tx frequency of VSAT modem for this record.
Tracking.rf_freq (GHz) Tracking.type	Tracking RF frequency for this record. Narrow filter, DVB-S2 decoder and VSAT modem RSSI.
Sat.long (degree)	Longitude position of the satellite.
Carrier rf.rx (GHz) Carrier rf.tx (GHz)	Rx frequency of carrier for this record. Tx frequency of carrier for this record.
Pol.rx Pol.tx	Current Rx and Tx polarization modes
Rx Lock (%) Logon (%)	Rx locked and logon time, in percent, for the sampling interval.
Pos Ok (%)	Valid position, in percent of the sampling interval.
VMU Connection (%)	Link with VSAT modem, in percent of the sampling interval.
Blocking (%)	Ship in blocking zone, in percent of the sampling interval.
DualAntenna.mode DualAntenna.logon_remote (%) DualAntenna.active (%)	Shows the current mode and the time active and remote logon.

Table 6-19: Parameters recorded in a statistics report



Covered area:
 If range > 0: Go from Min to Max counterclockwise
 If range < 0: Go from Min to Max clockwise

Figure 6-29: Statistics — how to read data for a range

Processing the statistics report in a spreadsheet application

The statistics report is in a data format that can be imported into spreadsheet applications, e.g. Microsoft Excel, for further processing.

1. Save the zipped file to your computer and extract the text file. The file name contains the identification of the system (example: adu-acu3_stat_20111021110901_day.csv).
2. Open the spreadsheet application, for example Microsoft Excel. On the tab Data click the tab Import from text. Import the unzipped text file and follow the instructions in the wizard. When asked about the delimiter, select 'comma'.

The following figure shows an example of a statistics report.

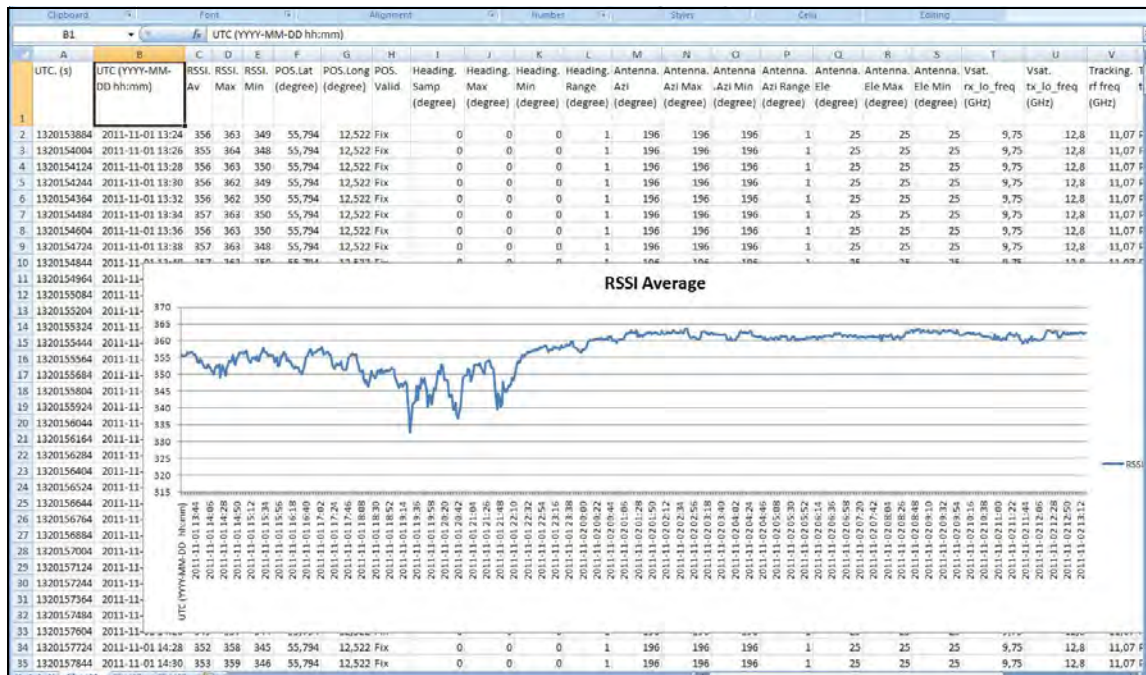


Figure 6-30: Statistics report (example)

Remote syslog

You can set up the antenna to send each syslog message to a syslog server to advise the system administrator of the current status of the antenna.

To set up sending syslog messages to a syslog server, do as follows:

1. Select **SETTINGS > Reporting**.
2. In the section **Remote syslog** select **On** to enable remote syslog (default: **Off**).
3. Enter the IP address of the syslog server to which the syslog messages will be sent.
4. Click **Apply**.

SNMP traps

SNMP traps, or notifications, are network packets which advise the system administrator about significant events in the antenna, e.g. alarms and system error messages. They are generated by the antenna and can be sent automatically to an SNMP trap receiver/manager. The event time is UTC time.

To set up reporting SNMP traps to an SNMP server, do as follows:

1. Select **SETTINGS > Reporting**.
2. In the section **SNMP traps** select **On** to enable sending of SNMP traps (default: **Off**).
3. Enter the IP address of the SNMP trap receiver/manager to which the SNMP traps will be sent.
4. Enter the Community name. This is the name of the SNMP trap receiver/manager. This is needed for authentication of the SNMP trap request.
5. Click **Apply**.

6.3.7 Upload of new software

For uploading new software to the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku see *Software update* on page 8-5.

6.3.8 Administration

In this section of the web interface you can configure the following administrative settings:

- To change the password or log out
- To set up user permissions for guest login
- To import and export a system configuration
- To reset to factory default

To change the password or log out

On the page **ADMINISTRATION** and **User login** you can change the password for the user currently logged in (admin or guest), or you can log out.

The screenshot shows the web interface's Administration page. At the top, there are RX and TX status indicators and a Tracking section. The main content area is divided into two columns. The left column contains a navigation menu with items: DASHBOARD, SETTINGS, SERVICE, ADMINISTRATION (expanded), User login (selected), User administration, User permissions, and Export/import config. The right column, titled 'USER LOGIN', contains a 'Remember to log out after use' checkbox, a 'User name' field with 'admin' entered, a 'Current password' field with the placeholder 'Optional for local administrat...', a 'New password' field with '8 characters minimum' placeholder, and a 'Retype new password' field with '8 characters minimum' placeholder. Below these fields are 'Change' and 'Logout' buttons.

Figure 6-31: Web interface: Administration, change password

To change the current password, do as follows:

1. Enter the current password.
2. Type in the new password (minimum 8 characters) and retype it on the next line.
3. Click **Change**. At the next login the new password is required.
4. Click **Logout** to log out of the web interface. If you have not entered anything for 30 minutes, you are logged out automatically.

To change the guest password

The administrator can change the guest password as follows:

1. Select **ADMINISTRATION > User administration**.

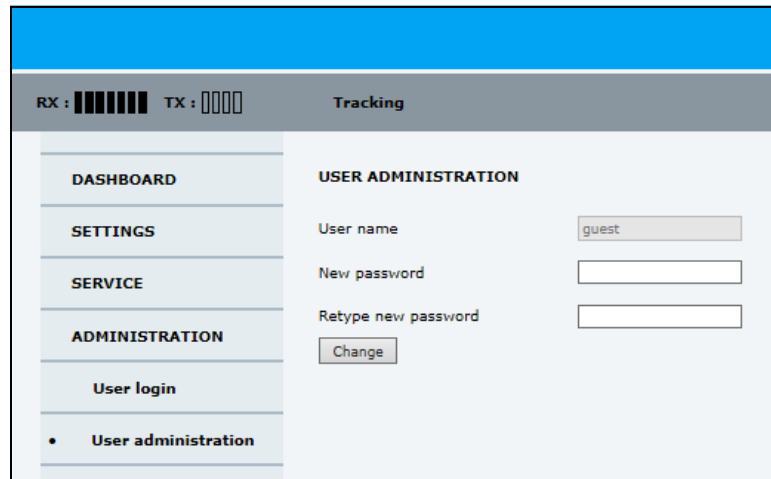


Figure 6-32: Web interface: Administration, change guest password

2. Type in the new guest password and retype it on the next line.
3. Click **Change**.

Note If you want the web interface to require the guest password, remember to select **Require guest login** in the **User permissions** page. See next section.

To set up user permissions for guest login

You can manage user access to certain functions of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system. You can allow or deny users that are not administrators access to certain functions and make these pages read-only. This is useful if you want to protect the system against unintended changes or tampering of the system.

Important Study this screen thoroughly and decide which areas of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system you want to give non-administrator users access to.

To set up the user permissions, do as follows:

1. From the left navigation pane, select **ADMINISTRATION > User permissions**.

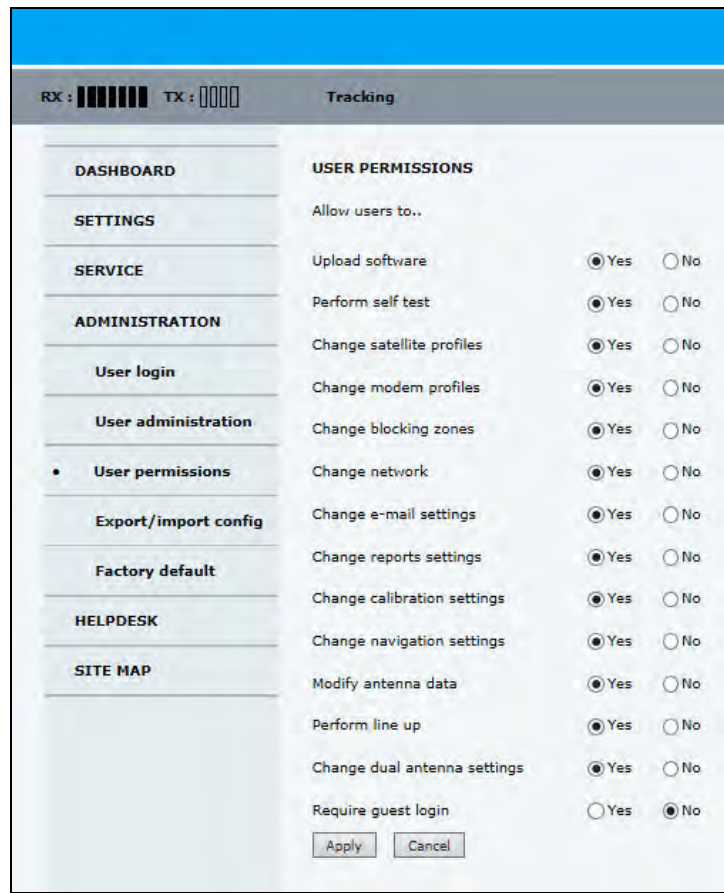


Figure 6-33: Web interface: ADMINISTRATION, User permissions

- For each item under **ALLOW USERS TO:** select
 - Yes** to allow access
 - No** to block access to the settings. Then the pages are read-only, changes cannot be made by non-administrator users.

Change network: Change IP configuration of the LAN connectors. For further information see *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.

Change email settings: Change e-mail addresses for sending reports. For further information see *E-mail setup (secure e-mail)* on page 6-37.

Modify antenna data: Only used during service and maintenance.

Require guest login: If you select **Yes**, you must enter user name and password to enter the web interface. Use user name **guest** and the password **guest** (configured by the administrator) or the user name **admin** and the administrator password. For further information see *First time login as administrator* on page 6-2.

- Click **Apply**.

The settings to which access is denied are now greyed out for the non-administrator user.

To import and export a system configuration

If you need to reuse a configuration in another SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system, you can save the current configuration to a file, which can then be loaded into another SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku. You can also use this feature for backup purposes.

The configuration file contains all the settings you have entered during system setup: satellite profiles, modem profiles, LAN setup, blocking zones, etc.

To save a configuration to a file, do as follows:

1. Select **ADMINISTRATION > Export/import config**.
2. Click the button **Export**. Follow the download instructions on the screen. You can use this configuration file for upload into another SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku,

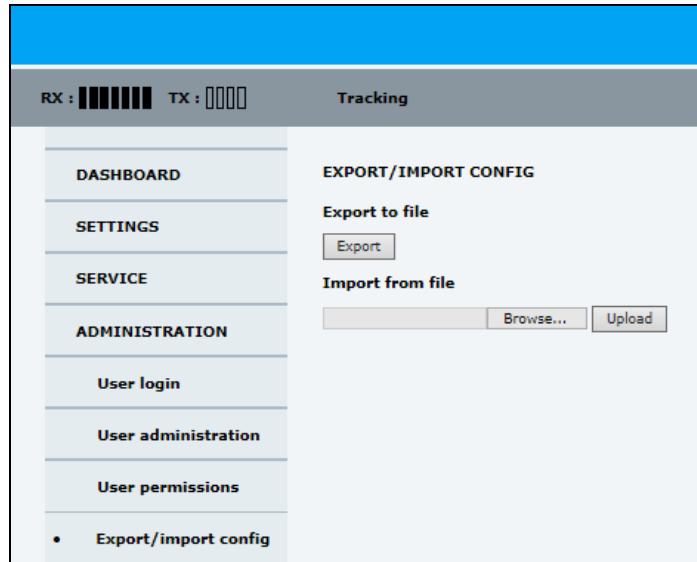


Figure 6-34: Web interface: Administration, Export/import configuration

To load a configuration from a file, do as follows:

1. Select **ADMINISTRATION > Export/import config**.
2. Click the button **Browse** and locate the configuration file (.cfg file) you want to upload. Then click the button **Open**.
3. In the web interface click the button **Upload**.

To clone a system configuration, do as follows:

1. Reset to factory default, see the following section for details.
2. Import a configuration from file, see section above.

To reset to factory default

When resetting SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku to factory default, the following settings are deleted:

- All satellite profiles
- All modem profiles
- Blocking zones
- Heading settings
- Network setup
- User permissions

- ACU display: brightness setting

To reset to factory default settings, do as follows:

1. From the left navigation pane, select **ADMINISTRATION > Factory default**.

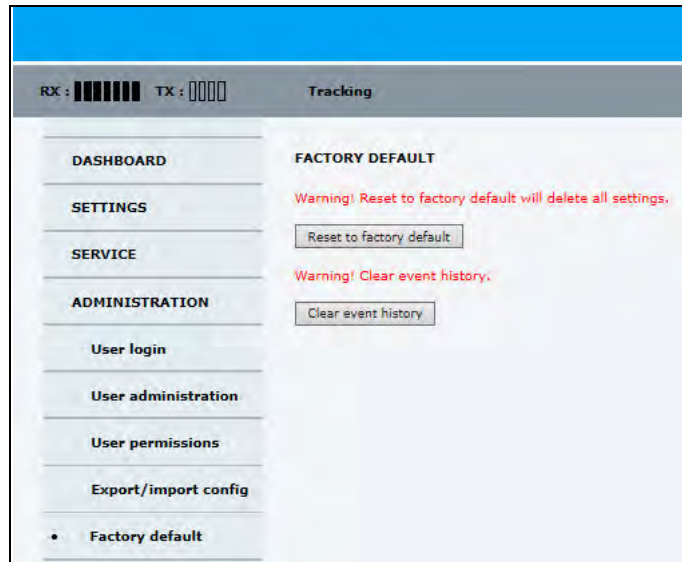


Figure 6-35: Web interface: ADMINISTRATION, Factory default

2. Click **Reset to factory default**.

Note Calibration data for azimuth and cable calibration are not reset during factory default.

3. Click **Clear event history** if you want to clear all registered events.

6.4 Keypad and menus of the ACU

6.4.1 ACU display and keypad

In the ACU display you can see the current state of the system. You can also see events (warnings, errors and information) and how the system has been configured. Use the keypad to navigate through the menu tree.

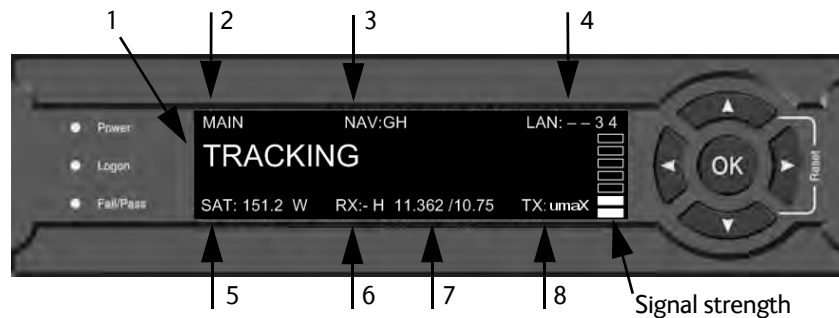


Figure 6-36: Display (example) and keypad of the ACU

- Current status of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku:
 - NOT READY** (waiting for input from GNSS, e.g. GPS)
 - ANTENNA INITIALIZING**
 - ANTENNA SW UPLOAD**
 - Antenna POST error**
 - XIM data error**
 - Unrecoverable XIM data error**
 - System upgrade**
 - Antenna POST pending**
 - Antenna POST**
 - SAFE MODE** (error, followed by an error description)
 - SERVICE SWITCH** (service switch in ADU activated)
 - READY** (waiting for data from the modem or no satellite profile selected)
 - POINTING ANTENNA** (locating the satellite)
 - ACQUIRING SIGNAL** (acquiring the satellite signal)
 - TRACKING** (tracks the current satellite)
 - LINEUP** (line up is activated)
 - Azimuth calibration**
 - TX cable calibration**
 - Test**
 - NOT READY** (waiting for input from GNSS, e.g. GPS)
 - Not ready: Initializing**
 - Not ready: Need pos**
 - BLOCKING ZONE** (antenna is pointing into a blocking zone)
 - NO TX ZONE** (antenna is pointing into a no TX zone; TX is off)
- Current menu.

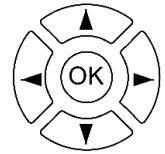
3. **NAV:** Navigational information
 First letter: **G** (Valid GPS signal received from the GPS module) or **g** (No valid GPS fix)
 Second letter: **H** (Valid ship heading data received from the ship's gyro) or **h** (No valid heading data).
4. **LAN:** LAN connectors used, **1, 2, 3, 4, -**.
5. **SAT:** Longitude, satellite position of the currently active satellite profile.
6. **RX:**
1 (Rx Lock: - or **1**),
H (horizontal) or **V** (vertical) (RX polarization of currently active satellite profile).
7. RF tracking frequency in GHz and LNB LO Frequency.
8. **TX:** <External Un-mute> <Modem TX allowed> <ADU TX allowed> <TX pol>
 Read the TX status as follows: Upper case: Ok, lower case: Not ok, - unknown.
 <External Un-mute> = [U,u]
 <Modem TX allowed> = [m,M]
 <ADU TX allowed> = [a,A]
 <Tx pol>=[-,X,C]

After 1 hour the display is dimmed to lowest intensity. Press any key to light up the display.

6.4.2 Navigating the menus

Use the keypad to navigate the menus.

- Press **OK** or **▶** to select a menu item.
- Use the arrow keys **▲** and **▼** to go through the menu items or enter a number, digit by digit.
- Use the arrow keys **◀** and **▶** to go through the settings and move from one digit to the next.
- Press **OK** to select a setting.
- Press **◀** again to move one level up. If applicable, confirm to store the new setting by pressing **OK**.



6.4.3 The menu tree

In the menu tree you can see how the system has been configured. To enter satellite information directly, use a connected PC and the web interface.

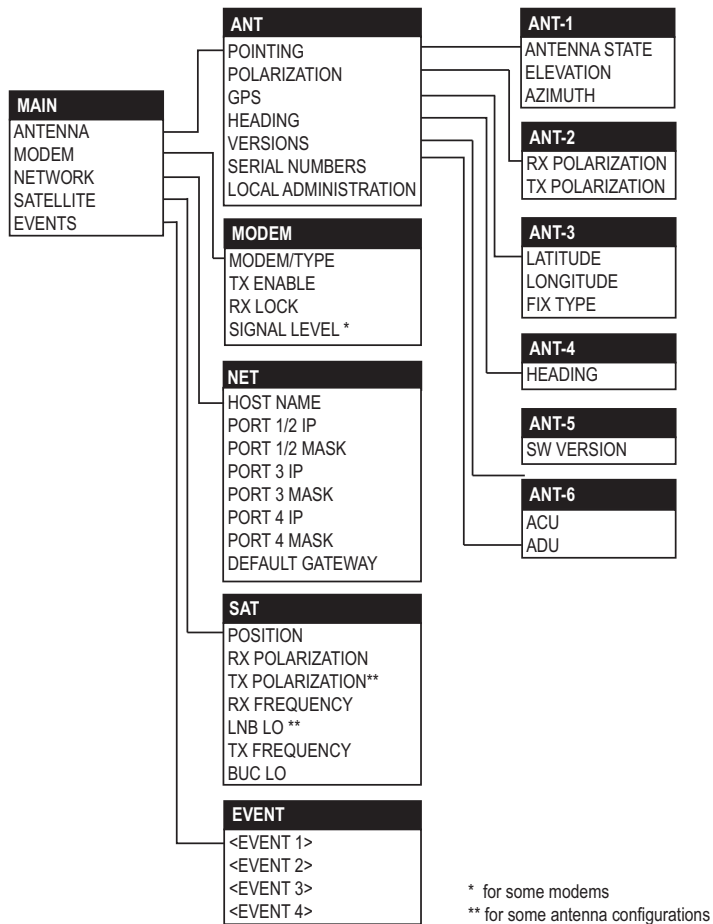


Figure 6-37: Antenna Control Unit, menu tree

Top-level menu

Top-level menu	Description
MAIN	<p>View with current status of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku. Example when logged on to the satellite:</p> <pre> MAIN NAV:GH LAN: -- 3 4 TRACKING SAT: 151.2 W RX:- H 11.362 /10.75 TX:maX </pre> <p>This view is displayed after a time out of 10 minutes. Press any key (except left arrow) to enter the menu at MAIN. New events are shown in this display. If an event is displayed, press OK to jump directly to the menu EVENTS for viewing the currently active events.</p>

Table 6-20: Top-level menus of the ACU

Top-level menu	Description
ANTENNA	Shows the current ADU parameters, position, software version and serial numbers of the ADU and ACU.
MODEM	Selected VSAT modem type and setup, including signal level.
NETWORK	Shows the IP addresses and netmasks of the LAN connectors of the ACU and the management mask.
SATELLITE	Current satellite information. This information is entered using the web interface.
EVENTS	View system events. Active events are shown as: X ACTIVE EVENTS in the MAIN display. Press OK to update the list.

Table 6-20: Top-level menus of the ACU (Continued)

Menu descriptions

ANTENNA menu	Description
POINTING	ANTENNA STATE: Current state of the antenna, e.g. TRACKING ELEVATION: Current elevation angle of the antenna AZIMUTH: Current azimuth of the antenna, with reference to North
POLARISATION	RX POLARISATION: HORIZONTAL or VERTICAL, read from connected VSAT modem. TX POLARISATION: X-POL or Co-POL, read from connected VSAT modem.
GPS	LATITUDE: current latitude, read from GPS module. LONGITUDE: current longitude, read from GPS module. FIX TYPE: 2D or 3D
HEADING	Ship's heading in degrees with reference to North, provided by the ship's gyro.
VERSIONS	Current software version.
SERIAL NUMBERS	ACU: ACU serial number ADU: Serial number of the antenna
LOCAL ADMINISTRATION	Select LOCAL ADMINISTRATION to get administrator access for 1 hour or until next reboot

Table 6-21: ANTENNA menu of the ACU

MODEM menu	Description
MODEM TYPE	Activated modem type.
TX ENABLE	On or off, information delivered by the connected VSAT modem.
RX LOCK	On or off, information delivered by the connected VSAT modem.
SIGNAL LEVEL	Current input signal level from VSAT modem. iDirect openAMIP modem: (PWR) 0-500, delivered by the connected modem. For values <250 the antenna searches after a new signal. Other modem: Signal level in dB.

Table 6-22: MODEM menu of the ACU

NETWORK menu	Description
HOST NAME	The host name is used for identification purposes, e.g. in reports.
PORT 1/2 IP	Current IP address for LAN 1 and LAN 2.
MASK 1/2	Current netmask for LAN 1 and LAN 2.
PORT 3 IP	(LAN 3) Current IP address of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku web interface (default: 192.168.0.1).
MASK 3	(LAN 3) Current netmask of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku web interface (default: 255.255.255.0).
PORT 4 IP	Current IP address for LAN 4.
MASK 4	Current netmask for LAN 4.
DEFAULT GATEWAY	Current default gateway.

Table 6-23: NETWORK menu of the ACU

SATELLITE menu	Description
POSITION	Position of the current satellite.
RX POLARISATION	HORIZONTAL, VERTICAL.
TX POLARISATION	X-polarization or Co-polarization, auto-selected by VSAT modem
RX FREQUENCY	Ku band receiving frequency of the active satellite, auto-selected by VSAT modem.
LNB LO	Auto selected by VSAT modem.

Table 6-24: SATELLITE menu of the ACU

SATELLITE menu	Description
TX FREQUENCY	Transmission frequency, auto-selected by VSAT modem
BUC LO	12.8 GHz, system parameter

Table 6-24: SATELLITE menu of the ACU (Continued)

EVENT menu	Description
<EVENT>	<p>In this menu all active events are listed. Use ▼ and ▲ to go through the active events.</p> <p>Events can be of the type WARNING or ERROR. The event time is UTC time.</p> <p>If a new event occurs or there is a change in the event list while you are in the EVENTS menu, a * is shown in the upper left corner of the display, next to the menu name. Press OK to update the EVENTS list, the * will be removed.</p> <p>A > means the event text is longer than the display. Press to > to see the remaining text.</p>

Table 6-25: EVENTS menu of the ACU

Example: **EVENT 1/4***: This is the first event out of a list of 4 and there has been a change in the list. EVENT 1/4 will always be shown, the * indicates that there has been a change.

6.4.4 Adjusting brightness of the display

To adjust the brightness do the following:

1. Press and hold **OK** for a short moment until BRIGHTNESS XXX% is displayed (XXX is the current brightness value).
2. Hold OK pressed + press ▲ for lighter or ▼ for darker display.
3. Release OK to leave the brightness menu.

6.4.5 Power cycle of the ACU and ADU

To power cycle the ACU and ADU do as follows:

1. Press and hold ▲ and ▼ until the ACU display shuts down and the ACU reboots.



Figure 6-38: Reset the system

2. Wait until the system has rebooted and is operational again. The last active satellite profile will be used.

6.5 SNMP support

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku supports SNMP v2 requests to retrieve configuration and present settings. SNMP is always enabled on all Ethernet interfaces. The SNMP community string is **public**. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku offers via SNMP most of the data that are available from the DASHBOARD web pages. Detailed documentation about supported OIDs can be found in the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku MIB file.

The MIB entries are grouped as shown below:

- System configuration
- Navigation coordinates
- Antenna pointing
- Dashboard and profile
- Tracking receiver

Note None of the SNMP values need to be polled more often than once a minute. Polling SNMP values more frequently will impact the performance of the ACU.

You can download the ACU MIB file directly from the ACU:

1. Go to the **HELPDESK** page.
2. Click the link **Download MIB file**.

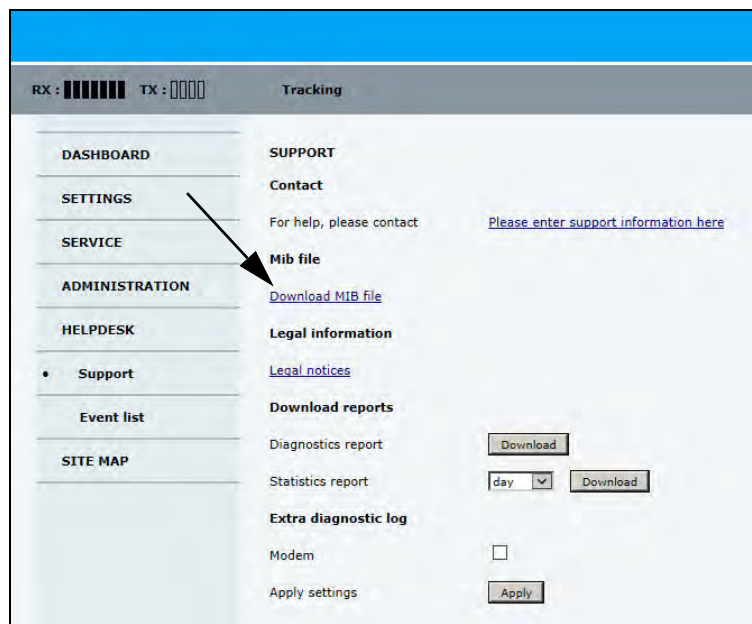


Figure 6-39: Download of the MIB file

3. Save the file on your computer.

You can also download the ACU MIB from Cobham eSupport web site. You can set up SNMP traps, see *Reports, syslog and SNMP traps* on page 6-38.

Installation check

Now that you have installed the system, you can test it to verify it is ready for customer delivery. Follow the check lists below to test the system for proper operation.

- *Installation check list: Antenna*
- *Installation check list: ACU, connectors and wiring*
- *Installation check list: Functional test in harbor*

7.1 Installation check list: Antenna

Step	Task	Further information	Done
1.	Check that the antenna is free of obstructions.	See <i>Obstructions (ADU shadowing)</i> on page 3-4.	
2.	Make sure there is sufficient space for access through the service hatch.	See <i>To install the ADU</i> on page 3-17.	
3.	Make sure to maintain the vertical orientation of the ADU center line.		
4.	Check that the ADU is installed where vibrations are limited to a minimum.		
5.	Check that you programmed the blocking zones correctly.	See <i>Blocking zones – azimuth and elevation</i> on page 3-5 and <i>To set up blocking zones (RX and TX)</i> on page 6-31.	
6.	Check that the safety distance for radiation hazard is obeyed.	See <i>Safe access to the ADU: Radiation hazard</i> on page 3-6.	
7.	Check that the mounting height of the antenna is in accordance with the ship's min. roll period.	See <i>Ship motion and offset from the ship's motion centre</i> on page 3-6.	
8.	Make sure that the requirements for mast foundation and height, including flatness, gusset plates and distance from welding seams are met.	See <i>ADU mast design: Foundation and height</i> on page 3-7.	
9.	Make sure that the distances to radar, Inmarsat systems, GPS receivers and other transmitters are as required.	See <i>Interference from radar, GPS, L-band and other transmitters</i> on page 3-12.	

Table 7-1: Installation check list: Antenna

Step	Task	Further information	Done
10.	Make sure that the drain tube is open and risk for water intrusion is at a minimum.	See <i>Other precautions</i> on page 3-15.	
11.	Check that the ADU is grounded correctly, using the mounting bolts.	See <i>To ground the ADU</i> on page 3-21 and <i>Grounding and RF protection</i> on page H-1.	

Table 7-1: Installation check list: Antenna (Continued)

7.2 Installation check list: ACU, connectors and wiring

Step	Task	Verification and further information	Done
1.	Check that the ACU is grounded correctly, using the mounting bolts and washers.	See <i>To ground the ACU</i> on page 3-24 and <i>Grounding and RF protection</i> on page H-1.	
2.	Make sure you strain relieved the cables.	See <i>To install the ACU</i> on page 3-23.	
3.	Make sure that the VSAT modem is mounted close to the ACU.	See <i>General mounting considerations</i> on page 3-24.	
4.	Check that the ADU antenna N-connector is properly connected with the 50 Ohm RF cable.	Visual inspection of the cover plate at the bottom of the ADU.	
5.	Check that the ACU antenna N-connector is properly connected with the 50 ohm RF cable.	Visual inspection of the connector panel of the ACU.	
6.	Check that the ACU's Rx Out is connected to the VSAT modem's Rx in using the included 1 m F-F 75 ohm cable.	Visual inspection of the connector panel of the ACU and the VSAT modem.	

Table 7-2: Installation check list: ACU, connectors and wiring

Step	Task	Verification and further information	Done
7.	Check that the ACU's Tx In is connected to the VSAT modem's Tx out using the included 1 m F-F 75 ohm cable.	Visual inspection of the connector panel of the ACU and the VSAT modem.	
8.	<p>Check connection of the VSAT modem:</p> <p>COMTECH only! Check that the ACU RS-232 port is connected to the Remote Control port and Alarm port of the VSAT modem using the serial cable (specifications in <i>Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A</i> on page C-2).</p> <p>iDirect iNFINITI Series/ Evolution only! Check that the ACU RS-232 port is connected to the Console port of the VSAT modem using the included serial cable.</p> <p>iDirect iNFINITI Series only! Check that the ACU LAN port 1 is connected to the LAN B of the VSAT modem using the included CAT5 Ethernet cable.</p> <p>iDirect Evolution only! Check that the ACU LAN port 1 is connected to the LAN of the VSAT modem using the included CAT5 Ethernet cable.</p> <p>STM SatLink 2900: Check that the ACU LAN port 1 is connected to the LAN of the VSAT modem using the included CAT5 Ethernet cable.</p> <p>Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem: Check that the ACU RS-232 port is connected to the SERIAL port of the VSAT modem using the included serial cable.</p>	<p>Visual inspection of the connector panel of the ACU and the VSAT modem. See also:</p> <p><i>COMTECH 570L and ROSS box</i> on page D-16</p> <p><i>OpenAMIP setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution</i> on page D-3</p> <p><i>OpenAMIP setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution</i> on page D-3</p> <p><i>STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem</i> on page D-24</p> <p><i>Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem</i> on page D-28</p>	
9.	Check that the ADU's NMEA 0183 connector is connected to the NMEA 0183 bus of the vessel using the included multi-connector	Visual inspection of the connector panel of the ACU connector.	

Table 7-2: Installation check list: ACU, connectors and wiring (Continued)

7.3 Installation check list: Functional test in harbor

Step	Task	Further information	Done
1.	Check that the antenna is tracking the satellite	The logon LED in the ACU display must be steady green and the display shows: TRACKING. In the web interface check: DASHBOARD: System status: Tracking	
2.	Check that the VSAT modem is in lock and ready for Tx.	In the web interface check: DASHBOARD > VSAT MODEM > Signal level and RX frequency show values.	
3.	Connect a user PC LAN (not the service PC) to the Internet LAN connector, either on the LAN port 2 of the ACU (only X5 VSAT modem) or to the User LAN connector on the VSAT modem.	Check the VSAT modem documentation for details.	
4.	Make sure that the computer has no access to the Internet through other means (Wifi, 3G, 4G etc.). Open a DOS window and type: ping 4.2.2.2.	Check that you get a response.	
5.	Make sure that the computer has no access to the Internet through other means (Wifi, 3G, 4G etc.). Open a web browser and browse to e.g. www.google.com.	Check that the web page is downloaded.	
6.	If step 4 is successful and step 5 is not then it seems like the DNS is not configured correctly.	Check the VSAT modem documentation how to set up the DNS server, "Obtain DNS server address automatically" or enter specific DNS server addresses.	

Table 7-3: Installation check list: Functional test in harbour

Service

This chapter has the following sections:

- *Helpdesk*
- *Software update*
- *Modem configuration*
- *Status signalling with LEDs and status messages*
- *Removal and replacement of the ACU*
- *Removal and replacement of ADU modules*
- *Troubleshooting, basics*
- *Returning units for repair*

8.1 Helpdesk

If this manual does not provide the remedies to solve your problem, contact your service provider.

8.1.1 Help desk and diagnostic report

Support at the Help desk

During the installation you can enter the support contact for this installation under **HELPDESK > Support > Contact**. If you need help **with ACU or ADU related issues** call your service provider.

The HELPDESK > Support page also offers a link where you can download the MIB file, for details see *SNMP support* on page 6-54. At Legal notice the licence text for the source code of the parts of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku software that fall under free and open source software can be displayed. Furthermore, you can download a diagnostics report or a statistics report.



Figure 8-1: Web interface: HELPDESK

To set up the support contact of the Help desk, do as follows:

1. Select **HELPDESK** from the left navigation pane.
2. Click the link, enter support contact information and click **Apply**.

Diagnostics report

The Diagnostics report contains information relevant for the service personnel during troubleshooting. It is also useful documentation of the current setup and contains all parameters set during configuration. You may also choose to include modem communication data, see *To generate and download diagnostics or statistics reports* on page 8-3.

The main sections of the diagnostics report are:

- Software
- System
- Hardware
- Setup - System data
- Calibration - Calibration Data
- Blocking zones - Blocking zone configuration
- Network - LAN Configuration
- Modems - Modem profiles
- Satellites - Satellite profiles
- Operation - Current modem and navigation parameters.
- POST - results of the Power-On-Self-Test
- Active Events - lists the currently active events
- Events - List of all cleared events.

- System log

You can download a statistics report. This report contains information relevant for the service personnel during troubleshooting.

To generate and download diagnostics or statistics reports

To generate a diagnostics report do as follows:

1. Click **HELPDESK > Support**
2. Click **Download** next to **Diagnostics report**.
3. Save the file to your computer.
4. If you want the diagnostics report to include data from the connected modem select **Extra diagnostic log, Modem** and click **Apply**.


Note | The amount of modem data is usually significant and may fill the log quickly.

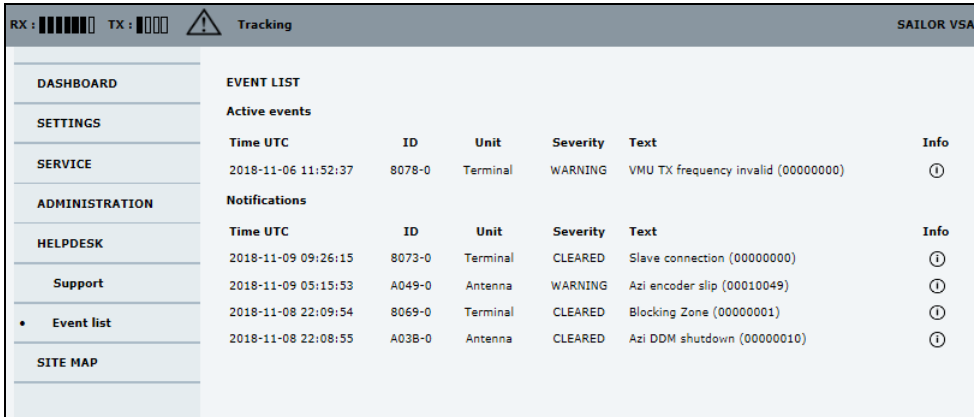
To generate a statistics report do as follows:

1. Click **HELPDESK > Support**
2. Select the period for the statistics from the drop down list and click **Download** next to **Statistics report**.

You can also configure the system to send statistics reports at defined time intervals. For further details on this see *Reports, syslog and SNMP traps* on page 6-38.

Event list

When an event is registered, the web interface shows an event icon  in the icon bar as long as the event is active. The ACU display shows also active events. To view the event list with active events, click the event icon from the icon bar at the top of the web interface, or select **HELPDESK > Event list** from the left navigation pane.








EVENT LIST					
Active events					
Time UTC	ID	Unit	Severity	Text	Info
2018-11-06 11:52:37	8078-0	Terminal	WARNING	VMU TX frequency invalid (00000000)	
Notifications					
Time UTC	ID	Unit	Severity	Text	Info
2018-11-09 09:26:15	8073-0	Terminal	CLEARED	Slave connection (00000000)	
2018-11-09 05:15:53	A049-0	Antenna	WARNING	Azi encoder slip (00010049)	
2018-11-08 22:09:54	8069-0	Terminal	CLEARED	Blocking Zone (00000001)	
2018-11-08 22:08:55	A03B-0	Antenna	CLEARED	Azi DDM shutdown (00000010)	

Figure 8-2: Web interface: HELPDESK, Event list

The **Event list** page shows a detailed list of active events and notifications including the time of the first occurrence, ID and severity of the event message, and a short text describing the error. Active events are cleared from the event list when the error is cleared. They are moved to the section **Notifications** and are displayed for 24 hours. All entries in

the section **Notifications** are cleared automatically after 24 hours and after restart of the system. For a list of all events with description, error code (ID), explanation and remedy see *System messages* on page I-1.

Self test

You can start a self test of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku. The self test checks all vital parts of the antenna and ACU. You can restart the antenna or the terminal (ADU and ACU). If a malfunction is detected, the unit provides system messages with a description of the failing test. This is indicated by in the icon bar in the web interface and also in the ACU display. You find all system messages in *System messages* on page I-1. An extended antenna POST is available, this test lasts longer and checks more components than the regular self test.

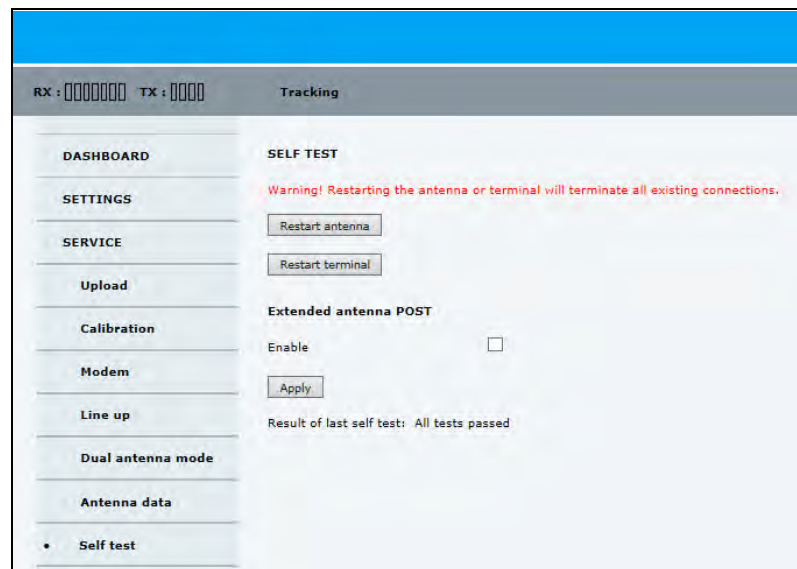


Figure 8-3: Web interface: SERVICE, Self test

Important

Warning! The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku will reboot to perform the self test. Rebooting the ADU and ACU will terminate all existing connections.

1. Click **SERVICE**.
2. Click the menu item **Self test**.
3. Select **Enable** under **Extended antenna POST** for the longer self test, click **Apply**.
4. Click **Restart antenna** to restart the ADU or **Restart terminal** to restart the ADU and ACU.

Reset to factory defaults

You can reset the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU and ACU to factory defaults. See *To reset to factory default* on page 6-46.

Important

Warning! Reset to factory default will delete all settings, including satellite and modem profiles, blocking zones, network setup, user permissions and ACU display brightness settings.

8.2 Software update

8.2.1 Hardware and software requirements

The following items are required before the software can be updated:

- One computer with a standard Ethernet port available.
- A standard Internet browser.
- One straight LAN cable.
- The file with the new software.

8.2.2 Software update (ADU and ACU)

Note Only qualified service personnel should make a software update.

Software update using the web interface of the ACU

1. Power up the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system, i.e. switch on the ACU. Wait until the text INITIALISING has disappeared from the ACU display.
2. Connect a PC to LAN interface 3 (Service port, standard Ethernet) or the front LAN connector of the ACU.
3. Open your Internet browser and enter the IP address of the ACU. The IP address is **http://192.168.0.1** (default). For further details on network setup see *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.
4. If needed, type in the administrator user name and password. See *First time login as administrator* on page 6-2.
5. The web interface opens directly with the **DASHBOARD** page.
6. Click **SERVICE** from the left navigation pane.

The **UPLOAD SOFTWARE TO TERMINAL** page is displayed.

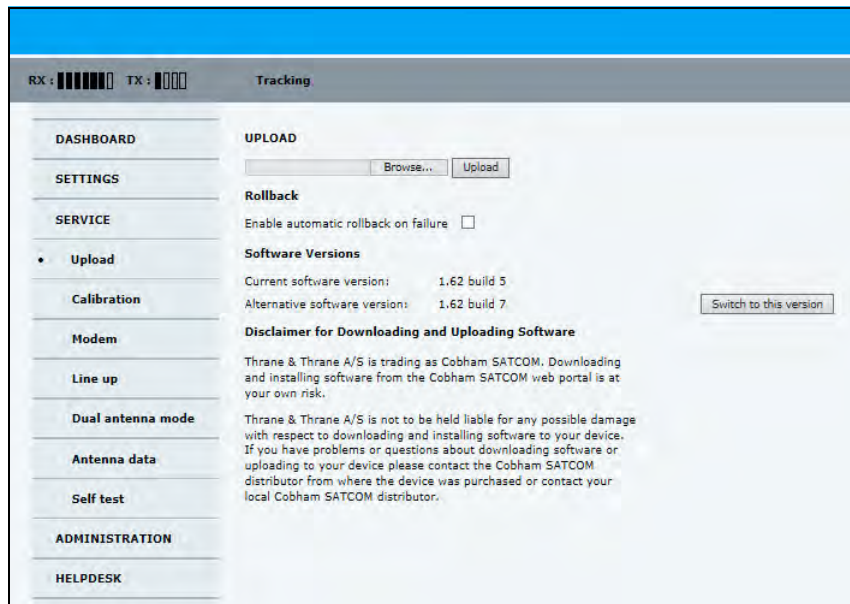


Figure 8-4: Software update with the web interface

7. Click **Browse...** and locate the new software file.

8. Click **Upload**.

Note that the upload procedure takes a couple of minutes. When done, the ACU automatically restarts with the new software version.

Important

Do not browse away from the upload page. This will terminate the upload process. Wait for the browser to reload automatically.

The start-up procedure after a software upload takes longer than the usual start-up time, as the software in the ADU must also be updated. The ACU display shows: **ADU SW UPLOAD**.

9. To make the system return to the previous software if an error occurs during the POST select **Enable automatic rollback on failure**.

10. Click **Switch to this version** if you want to force the system to use the alternative software version stated in the display.

Software recovery procedure (SAFE MODE)

To recover from a failed software upload, turn off the ACU and turn it on again. Then repeat the upload procedure as described in *Software update* on page 8-5. If this does not help use the following recovery procedure:

1. Switch off the ACU.
2. Press and hold down the arrow keys ◀ and ▶ on the keypad.
3. Switch the ACU on and wait for the display to show with a small font size **SAFE MODE** in the top left corner.



Figure 8-5: Recovery procedure after failed software upload

4. Release the arrow keys ◀ and ▶.
5. Connect a PC to LAN port 3 of the ACU.
6. Set the IP address of the PC to static: IP:192.168.0.2, Subnet: 255.255.255.0
7. Open an Internet browser and type http://192.168.0.1 (Default IP address of the ACU).

UPLOAD SOFTWARE TO TERMINAL

Disclaimer for Downloading and Uploading Software
 In the following Thrane & Thrane refers to Thrane & Thrane A/S trading as Cobham SATCOM.

Please be informed that downloading and installing software from the Thrane & Thrane web portal is at your own risk. Thrane & Thrane is not to be held liable for any possible damage with respect to downloading and installing software to your device.

If you have problems or questions with respect to downloading software or uploading your device please be informed that you will have to contact the Thrane & Thrane distributor from where the device was purchased or contact your local Thrane & Thrane distributor.

Please be advised that you will not be able to contact Thrane & Thrane for end user support and that we always recommend that software upgrades are being carried out by official Thrane & Thrane distribution partners.

FACTORY DEFAULT

Warning! Reset to factory default will delete all settings.

Figure 8-6: Upload software to terminal

8. Click **Browse...** and locate the software file.
9. Click **Upload**.

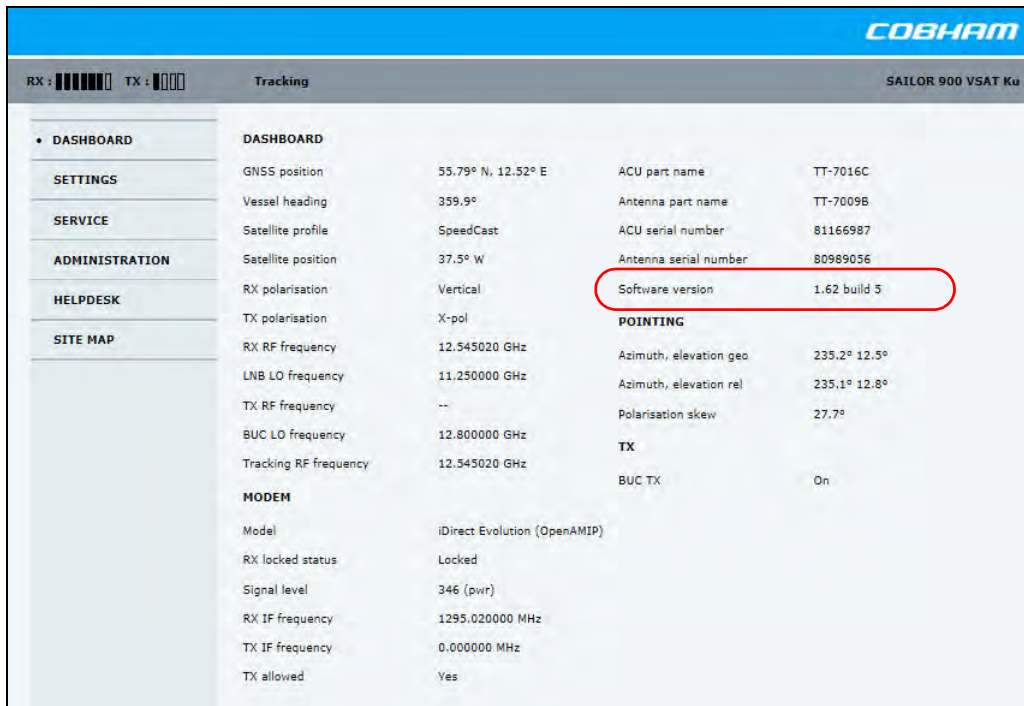
The upload procedure takes a couple of minutes. When done, the ACU automatically restarts with the new software version.

Important

Do not browse away from the upload page. This will terminate the upload process. Wait for the browser to reload automatically.

8.2.3 To verify the software update

1. The software version can be viewed in the **DASHBOARD** window of the web interface.
2. After completing the software update procedure, the ACU will perform a POST (Power On Self Test).
3. When the POST has finished, the green Pass/Fail LED on the front of the ACU must become steadily green. Verify that the Pass/Fail LED is not red nor flashing orange once every 2 seconds. Wait until the Pass/Fail LED is green.
4. Verify that the software update has been completed successfully. You find the software version number in the **DASHBOARD** window of the web interface.



The screenshot shows the COBHAM web interface for a SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku. The interface includes a navigation menu on the left with options: DASHBOARD, SETTINGS, SERVICE, ADMINISTRATION, HELPDESK, and SITE MAP. The main content area is titled 'Tracking' and displays various system parameters. The 'SOFTWARE' section is expanded, showing the following details:

Parameter	Value
GNSS position	55.79° N, 12.52° E
Vessel heading	359.9°
Satellite profile	SpeedCast
Satellite position	37.5° W
RX polarisation	Vertical
TX polarisation	X-pol
RX RF frequency	12.545020 GHz
LNB LO frequency	11.250000 GHz
TX RF frequency	--
BUC LO frequency	12.800000 GHz
Tracking RF frequency	12.545020 GHz
MODEM	
Model	iDirect Evolution (OpenAMIP)
RX locked status	Locked
Signal level	346 (pwr)
RX IF frequency	1295.020000 MHz
TX IF frequency	0.000000 MHz
TX allowed	Yes
ACU part name	TT-7016C
Antenna part name	TT-7009B
ACU serial number	81166987
Antenna serial number	80989036
Software version	1.62 build 5
POINTING	
Azimuth, elevation geo	235.2° 12.5°
Azimuth, elevation rel	235.1° 12.8°
Polarisation skew	27.7°
TX	
BUC TX	On

Figure 8-7: Verifying software update

8.3 Modem configuration

For details how to configure your VSAT modem, refer to the documentation supplied with your modem.

8.3.1 Access the modem configuration

For ease-of-use, you can access the modem (e.g. modem web interface) through the ACU using port forwarding. To make the modem accessible via the ACU, do as follows:

1. In the ACU web interface, select **SERVICE**.
2. Select **Modem**.

MODEM

Modem access configuration

HTTP tunnel to modem (port 8080)

HTTPS tunnel to modem (port 8443)

Telnet tunnel to modem (port 8023)

SSH tunnel to modem (port 8022)

Optional tunnel target IP address (blank to disable) ...

Figure 8-8: Modem access

3. Select one of the following methods to access the modem.
 - HTTP tunnel to modem (port 8080)
 - HTTPS tunnel to modem (port 8443)
 - Telnet tunnel to modem (port 8023)
 - SSH tunnel to modem (port 8022)
 - Optional tunnel target IP address (blank to disable)

Note For non-GX terminals, you must always enter the modem IP address here, it cannot be left blank.

4. Click **Apply**.

Example: To access the web interface of your modem using HTTPS, select **HTTPS tunnel to modem (port 8443)** and click **Apply**.

Then, in the address bar of your browser, enter:

https://<ACU IP address or hostname>:8443

You should now see the web interface of your modem in your browser.

8.4 Status signalling with LEDs and status messages

Built-In Test Equipment

The ADU and the ACU have a Built-In Test Equipment (BITE) function in order to make fault diagnostics easy during service and installation. The BITE test is performed during:

- Power On Self Test (POST), which is automatically performed each time the system is powered on.
- Person Activated Self Test (PAST), which is initiated by starting a self test in the web interface **HELPDESK > Self test**.

For details on error messages after a POST or a self test see *Event list* on page 8-3.

Means of signalling

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku provides various methods for signalling the system status. **LEDs** on the front panel of the ACU are used to signal:

- Power on/off
- Logon
- Fail/Pass

The built-in web interface of the ACU shows any events (BITE error codes) with a short message describing each error. This is also displayed in the ACU.

In an error situation, one of the following system status messages may be shown:

- ACU POST error
- ADU POST error
- SAFE MODE (plus information about the specific error, see *System messages* on page I-1).

8.4.1 LEDs of the ADU modules

Each ADU module has a Power and a Service LED.

LED	Behavior	Description
Power	Steady green	Power supply OK
	Off	No power
Service	Steady green	Module ok, application running.
	Flashing green	Waiting for upload
	Flashing red/green	Uploading application
	Steady red	Module error or loading error

Table 8-1: LEDs of the ADU modules

For a list of modules see *Removal and replacement of ADU modules* on page 8-13.

8.4.2 LEDs in the ACU

The ACU has 3 LEDs: Power, Logon and Fail/Pass LED.

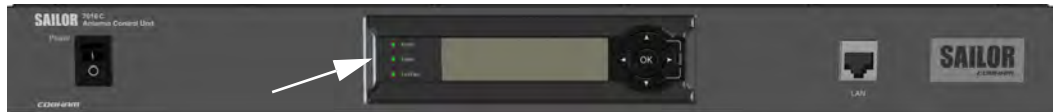


Figure 8-9: ACU — LEDs

LED	Behavior	Description
Power	Steady green	Power supply OK
	Steady red	Power supply failure
	Off	No power
Logon	Flashing green	Current status is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Searching satellite • Identifying satellite • Carrier lock & TX enabled from modem
	Steady green	Satellite link established
	Off	No satellite link acquired
Fail/ Pass LED	Steady red	A fault which prevents operation is present in the system (ACU, ADU, MODEM).
	Flashing green	A Power On Self Test (POST) or Person Activated Self Test (PAST) in progress. The current status is displayed.
	Flashing red	Active BITE failure or warning. The event is shown in the ACU display.
	Steady green	No faults.

Table 8-2: LEDs on the ACU

8.5 Removal and replacement of the ACU

There are no parts in the ACU that you can remove or replace. Contact your Cobham SATCOM service partner for repair or replacement.



Figure 8-10: Removal and replacement of the ACU

8.6 Removal and replacement of ADU modules

All replacement of modules must be carried out by a Cobham SATCOM service partner. The figure below shows the modules and their position. Some modules are equipped with LEDs for status information and troubleshooting.

For instructions on how to open and remove the service hatch see *To open the service hatch* on page 3-20.

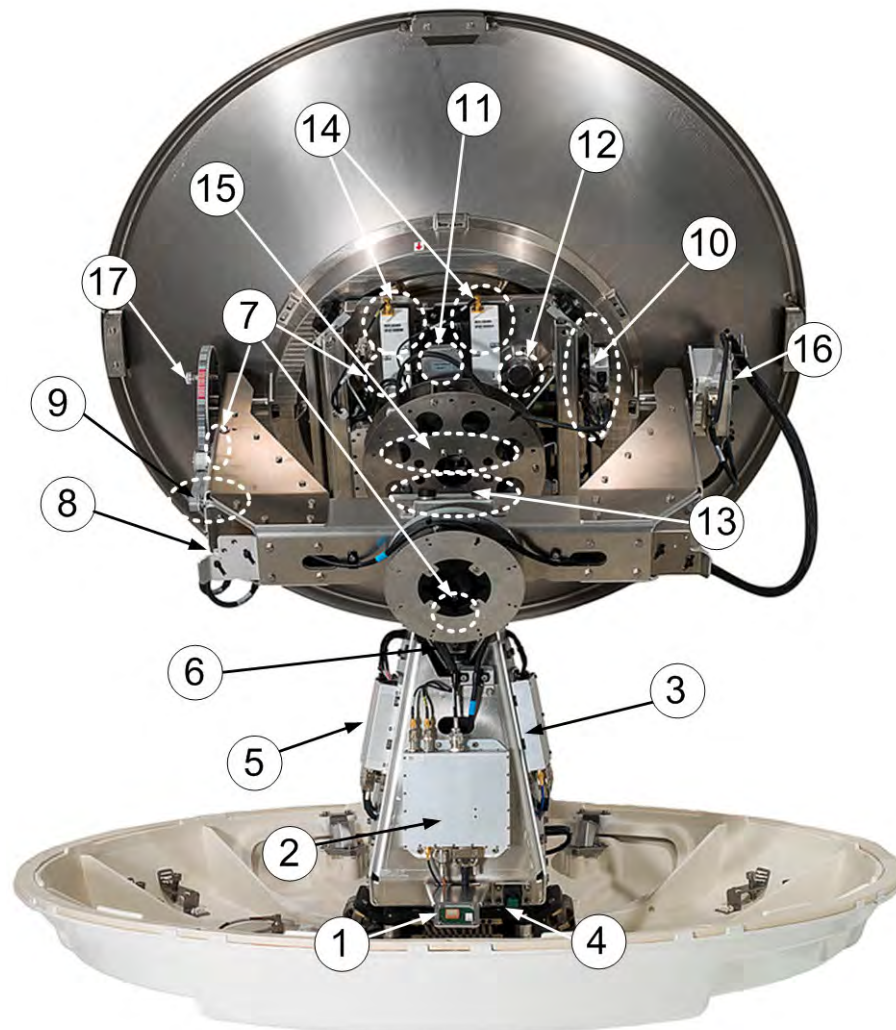


Figure 8-11: SAILOR 900: ADU modules and motor stop switch

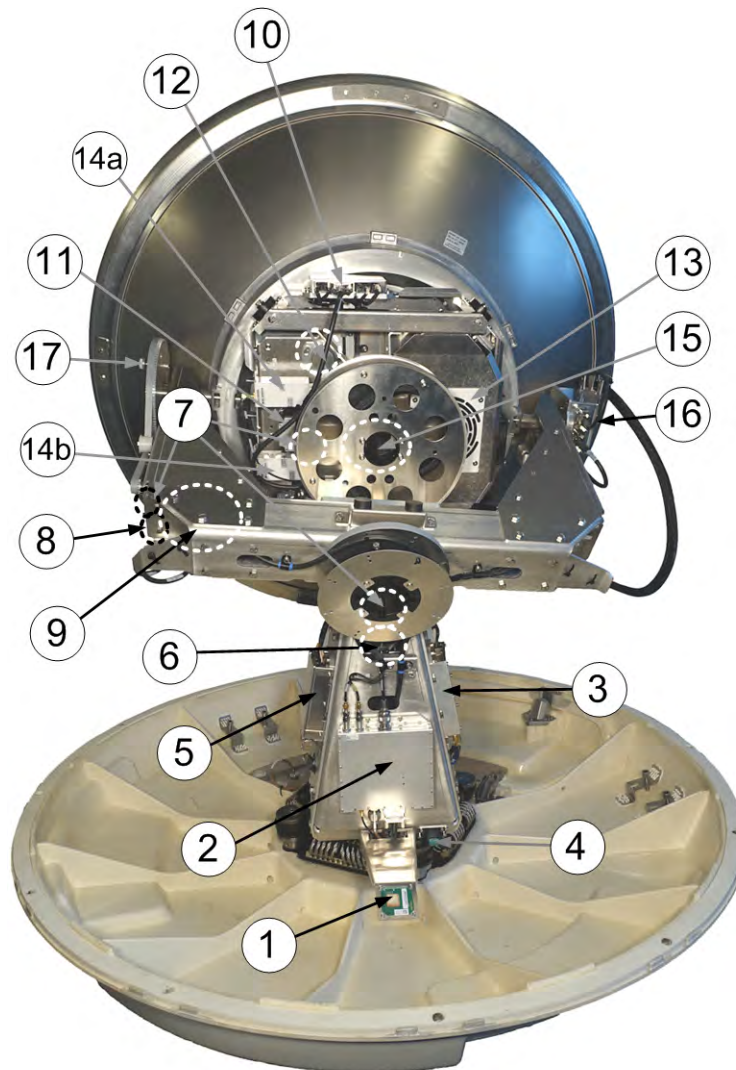


Figure 8-12: SAILOR 900HP: ADU modules and service switch

1. GNSS module (GPS, GLONASS, BEIDOU).
2. VSAT Interface Module (VIM).
3. Pedestal Control Module (PCM).
4. Service switch.
In switch-off position the DC Motor Driver modules (DDM), the Polarization Motor Module (PMM) and the BUC are turned off for safe conditions during service and repair. The switch must be in on position for normal ADU operation.
5. DC-Motor Driver Module for cross elevation (DDM).
6. Cross elevation motor and encoder.
7. Zero Reference Module (x4, 3 in the previous figure, 1 in the next figure) (ZRM) (not visible on photo).
8. DC-Motor Driver Module for elevation (on the bottom side) (DDM).

9. Elevation motor and encoder (not visible on photo).
10. Polarization Motor Module (PMM).
11. Polarization motor.
12. Polarization encoder (not visible on photo).
13. Block Up Converter (BUC). (behind cable screen)
14. Low Noise Block down converter (x2) (LNB).
15. Ortho Mode Transducer (OMT) (behind cable screen, not visible on photo).
16. Inertial Sensor Module (ISM).
17. Elevation locking pin to lock the antenna dish in a fixed position (for safety during service) (not visible on photo).

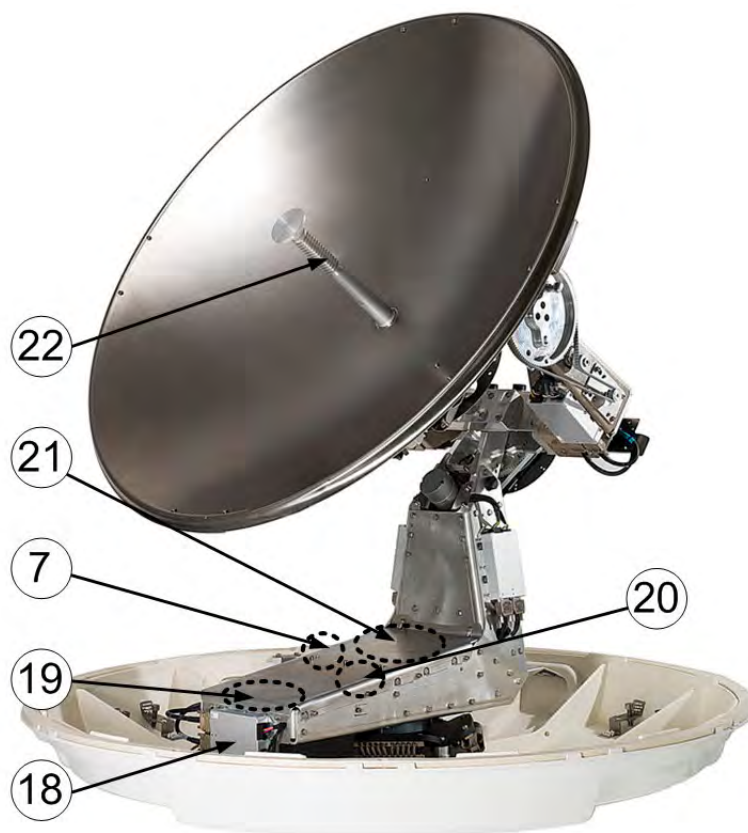


Figure 8-13: SAILOR 900: ADU modules (continued)

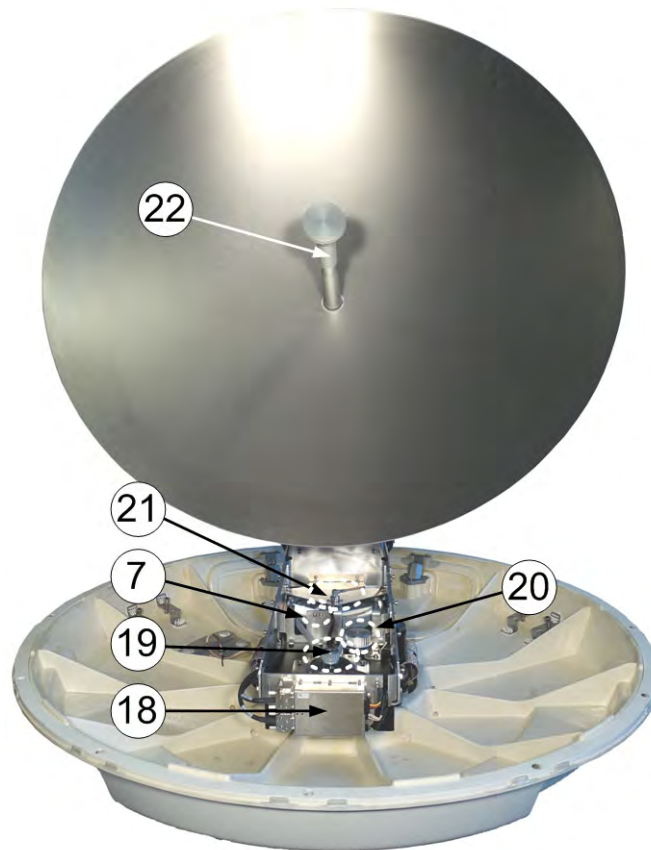


Figure 8-14: SAILOR 900 HP: ADU modules (continued)

18.DC-Motor Driver Module for Azimuth (DDM).

19.Azimuth motor.

20.Azimuth encoder.

21.Rotary joint.

22.Feed horn.

Before contacting your service partner check the LEDs on all modules (VIM, DDMs, PCM, PMM and ISM). See *LEDs of the ADU modules* on page 8-10 and *LEDs in the ACU* on page 8-11.

8.7 Troubleshooting, basics

8.7.1 Overview

This section describes an initial check of the primary functions of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system, and provides some guidelines for troubleshooting. Generally, if a fault occurs without any obvious reason, it is always recommended to observe the LEDs and the ACU display showing the active events. Possible failure states are shown in the web interface and the display of the ACU:

- SAFE MODE (e.g. hardware error, missing communication link between the ADU and ACU, excessive ship motion)
- XIM error (after exchange of modules)
- ADU POST error (hardware error)
- ACU POST error (hardware error)

For information on the function of the LEDs, see *Status signalling with LEDs and status messages* on page 8-10. For a list of all the error messages and warnings, see *Event messages – overview* on page I-1.

8.7.2 Event list for troubleshooting

You can use the event list for troubleshooting. It is described in detail at *Help desk and diagnostic report* on page 8-1. You can download the event list as part of a diagnostic report.

8.7.3 Diagnostics report for troubleshooting

You can generate a diagnostic report containing results from the POST, all events and system log information since the last reset to factory default. For more information see *Reports, syslog and SNMP traps* on page 6-38.

8.7.4 To verify that the antenna can go into tracking mode

In case there is no RX lock on the connected VSAT modem you can activate a service profile to verify that the transponder data used during calibration are received correctly. If the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can go into tracking mode it is most likely not defective.

1. Go to **SETTINGS** or **Satellite profiles**.
2. Activate a satellite profile that is used for azimuth calibration. This is a satellite profile that uses the VSAT modem profile **Service & Calibration**.
3. Go to **DASHBOARD** and monitor the field System status. If the field ends up showing Tracking, the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can track the satellite and is most likely not the reason why the VSAT modem is not in RX lock.

8.8 Returning units for repair

Should your Cobham SATCOM product fail, please contact your dealer or installer, or the nearest Cobham SATCOM partner. You will find the partner details on www.cobham.com/satcom, **Technical Service Partner List**. You can also access the **Cobham SYNC Partner Portal** at <https://sync.cobham.com/satcom>, which may help you solve the problem. Your dealer, installer or Cobham SATCOM partner will assist you whether the need is user training, technical support, arranging on-site repair or sending the product for repair. Your dealer, installer or Cobham SATCOM partner will also take care of any warranty issue.

Appendices

Technical specifications

This appendix has the following sections:

- *Specifications*
- *Patents*
- *Outline drawings*
- *VSAT LNB Data Sheet (physical LNB)*
- *VSAT 20W BUC Data Sheet (Extended), SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power*

A.1 Specifications

SPECIFICATIONS

Frequency band	Ku-Band only or Ku/Ka-Band convertible
Reflector size	103 cm / 40.6"
Certification	Compliant with CE (Maritime), ETSI
System power supply range	100 - 240 VAC, 50-60 Hz
Total system power consumption	480 W peak, 320 W typical

FREQUENCY BAND

Rx	10.70 to 12.75 GHz
Tx	13.75 to 14.50 GHz (extended band)

ANTENNA CABLE & CONNECTORS

ACU to ADU cable	Coax cable (50 Ω) for Rx, Tx and DC power on a single cable
ADU cable connector	Female N-Connector (50 Ω)
ACU cable connector	Female N-Connector (50 Ω)

ABOVE DECK UNIT (ADU)

Antenna type, pedestal	3-axis (plus auto skew) stabilized tracking antenna with integrated GNSS supporting GPS, GLONASS and Beidou
Antenna type, reflector system	Reflector/sub-reflector, ring focus
Transmit Gain	41.6 dBi typ. @ 14.25 GHz (excl. radome)
Receive Gain	40.6 dBi typ. @ 11.70 GHz (excl. radome)
System G/T	19.9 dB/K typ. @ 12.75 GHz, at $\geq 30^\circ$ elevation and clear sky (incl. radome)
BUC output power	8 W or 20 W, extended frequency, LO: 12.8 GHz
EIRP	50.1 dBW (8 W) or 54.3 dBW (20 W), incl. radome
LNB	2x multi-band LNBs
Polarisation	Linear X-Pol and Co-Pol
Tracking Receiver	Internal "all band/modulation type" and VSAT modem RSSI
Satellite acquisition	Automatic - with Gyro/GPS Compass input. Support for gyro free operation.
Elevation Range	-25° to +125°
Azimuth Range	Unlimited (Rotary Joint)
Ship motion, angular	Roll +/-30°, Pitch +/-15°, Yaw +/-10°
Ship, turning rate and acceleration	15°/s and 15°/s ²
ADU motion, linear	Linear accelerations +/-2.5 g max any direction
Vibration, operational	Sine: EN 60945 (8.7.2), DNV A, MIL-STD-167-1 (5.1.3.3.5). Random: Maritime
Vibration, survival	Sine: EN 60945 (8.7.2) dwell, MIL-STD-167-1 (5.1.3.3.5) dwell. Random: Maritime survival. IEC EN 60721-4-6
Shock	MIL-STD-810F 516.5 (Proc. II), IEC EN 60721-4-6
Temperature (ambient)	Operational: -25°C to 55°C, Storage: -40°C to 85°C
Humidity	100%, condensing
Rain / IP class	EN 60945 Exposed / IP56
Wind	80 kt. operational 110 kt. Survival
Ice, survival	25 mm / 1"
Solar radiation	1120 W/m ² to MIL-STD-810F 505.4
Compass safe distance	1.7 m / 67" to EN 60945
Maintenance, scheduled	None
Maintenance, unscheduled	All modules, motor, RF parts and belts are replaceable through service hatch
Built In Test	Power On Self-Test, Person Activated Self-Test and Continuous Monitoring w. error logging
Dimensions (over all)	Height: H 150 cm / 58.9", Diameter: \varnothing 130 cm / 51.3"
Weight (Ku/Ka convertible)	126.5 Kg / 279 lbs.
Weight (Ku Only)	137 Kg / 302 lbs.

ANTENNA CONTROL UNIT (ACU)

Dimensions	1U 19" Rack Mount HxWxD: 4.4 x 48 x 33 cm, HxWxD: 1.75" x 19" x 13"
Weight	4.5 kg / 10 lbs
Temperature (ambient)	Operational: -25°C to +55°C / -13°F to +131°F Storage: -40°C to +85°C / -40°F to +185°F
Humidity	EN 60945 Protected, 95% (non-condensing)
IP class	IP30
Compass safe distance	0.3 m / 12" to EN 60945
Interfaces	1 x Male N-Connector for antenna RF Cable (50Ω) with automatic cable loss compensation. 2 x F-Connectors (75 Ω) for Rx / Tx to VSAT Modem 1 x Ethernet Data (VSAT Modem Control) 1 x RS-422 Data (VSAT Modem Control) 1 x RS-232 Data (VSAT Modem Control) 1 x NMEA 0183 (RS-422) for Gyro/GPS Compass input 2 x Ethernet (User) 1 x Ethernet (Remote access, service, set-up etc.) 1 x AC Power Input 1 x Grounding bolt
Input power	100 - 240 VAC, 320 W typical, 480 W peak
Display	OLED (red) display, 5 pushbuttons, 3 discrete indicator LEDs and ON/OFF switch
No transmit zones	Programmable, 8 zones with azimuth and elevation

VSAT Modem Support

Modem protocols (ABS)	iDirect OpenAMIP and custom protocol Comtech ROSS Open Antenna Management (ROAM) ESS Satroaming Protocol STM SatLink Protocol
Modem types supported	iDirect iNFINITI 3000 / 5000 series iDirect Evolution X5 / X7 iDirect Velocity X7 Comtech CDM-570L / 625 / 840 Comtech CDM-570L with ROSS (ROAM) Gilat SkyEdge II / II-c / II PRO STM SatLink 2900 Inmarsat G5 Newtec 3100 / 3300 / 5000 / 6000 Newtec Dialog Viasat Linkway S2 Hughes HX-200 / HT2500 TSAT3000 Intersky 4G, Elbit

A.2 Patents

The patents listed below apply to SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku and SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power

Patent application number	Description
11749202.5; 10-2013-7008607; 13/819,621	An assembly comprising a movable and brakable/dampable part and a method for braking a movable part
WO 2012/175705	Virtual 4-band LNB
PCT/EP2012/063849	Combined antennas without switch

Table A-1: Patents

A.3 Outline drawings

A.3.1 ADU

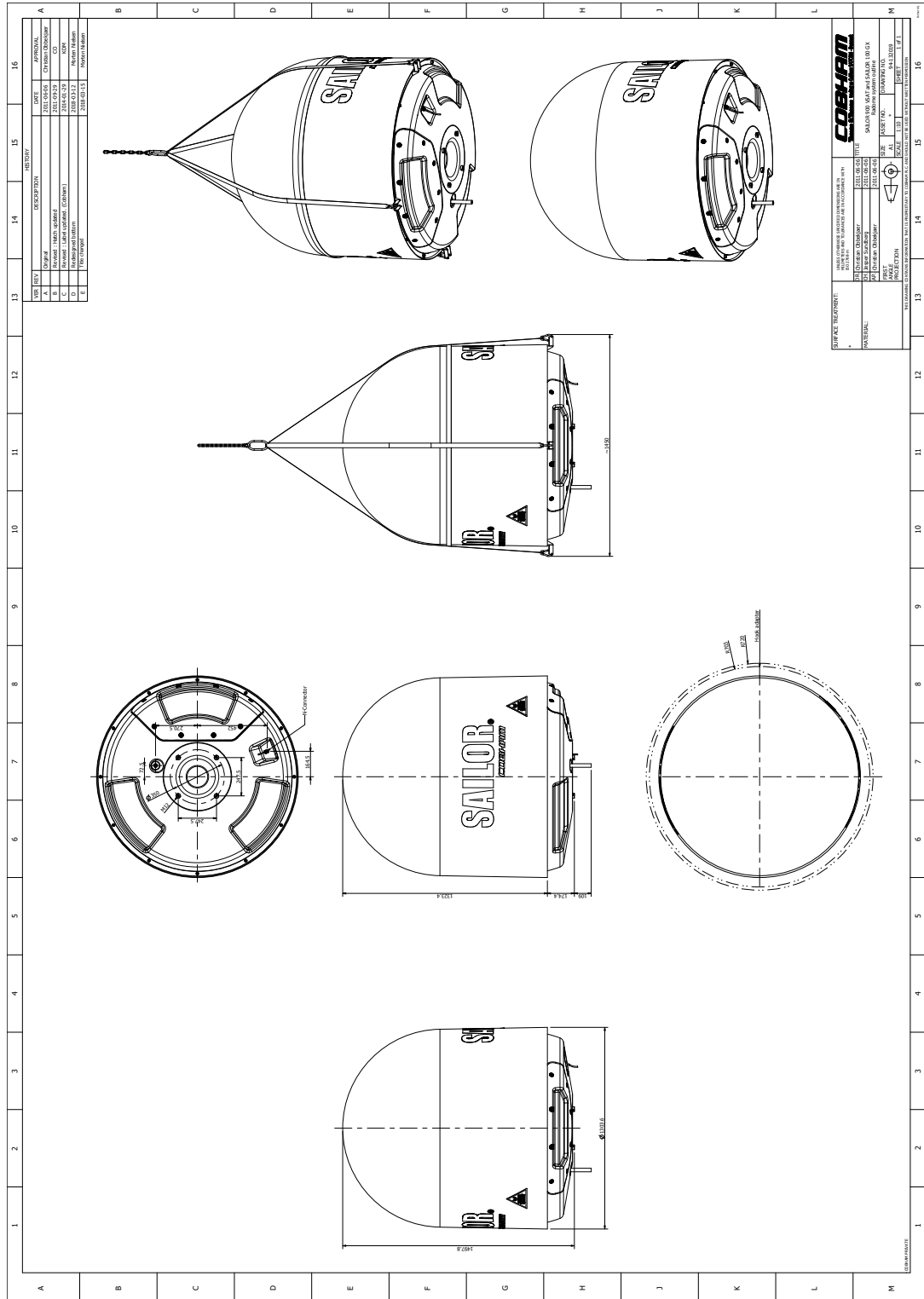


Figure A-1: Outline drawing: ADU

A.3.2 ACU

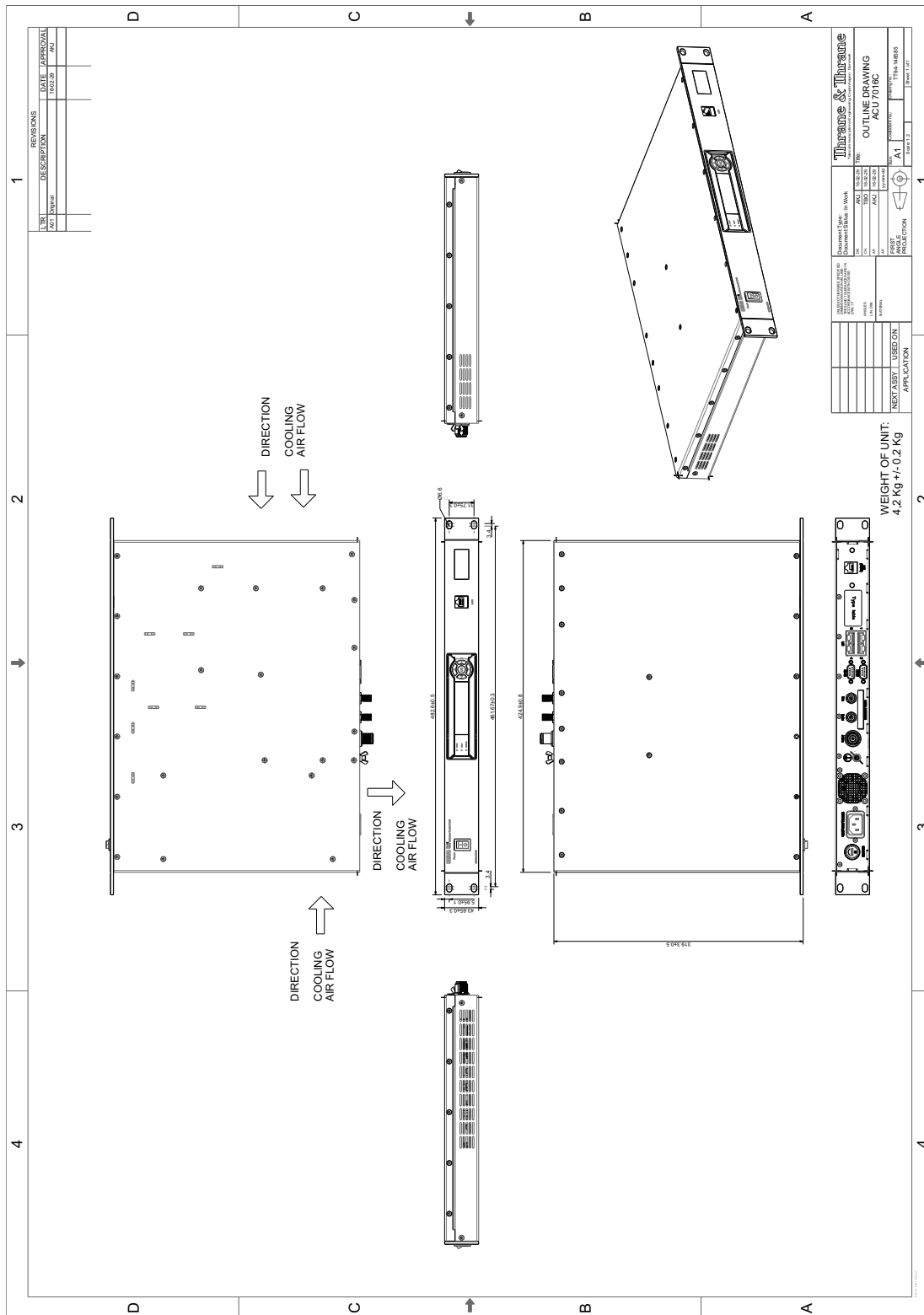


Figure A-2: Outline drawing: ACU (AC powered)

A.4 VSAT LNB Data Sheet (physical LNB)

The following table shows the data of the LNBs which are fitted in the ADU. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku is designed to make any Ku Band frequency in the range of 10.7 GHz to 12.75 GHz available to a VSAT modem by allowing the user to select the LNB LO of his choice – without having to exchange the physical LNBs in the ADU. This is achieved by the sophisticated single-cable solution of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku. See A.4.1 for configuration information.

Interface	Model	Specification
Input, Ku-band	2-band	WR75 waveguide
Output, IF	2-band	F (50 Ohm)
LO type	2-band	Locked to 10 MHz external reference over IF interface or ACU internal
LO frequencies	2-band	9.75, 10.75 GHz

Table A-2: Technical specifications for VSAT LNB 1/2

Parameter	Condition/remark	Unit	Min.	Typical	Max.
Input frequency range	VSAT	GHz	10.7		12,75
Output (IF) frequency range	2-band	MHz	950		2150
VSWR	Input	-			2.0 : 1
	Output	-			1.7 : 1
Noise Figure	At 25 °C	dB		0,8	
LO stability	Over temp. range	kHz	-10	0	10
Gain		dB		60	
Gain (relative)	Over 500 MHz BW	dB	-2.0	0	2.0
Gain (relative)	Over 36 MHz BW	dB	-0.5	0	0.5
External ref. freq. (input)	Nominal	MHz		10	
Power supply voltage	DC	V	11.0		19.0
Supply current	DC	mA			350
LO selection voltage	Voltage, low (L) (input)	V	11.0		14.0
	Voltage, high (H) (input)	V	16.0		19.0
Temperature range (ambient)	Operation	°C	-30		75
	Storage	°C	-40		85
Weight	Total	g			350
Dimensions (incl. connector) over all	L	mm			140
	W	mm			58
	H	mm			50

Table A-3: Technical specifications for VSAT LNB 2/2

A.4.1 VSAT LNB user installation and configuration information

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can interpret 4-band LNB switching signals and exact LO information acquired directly from the attached VSAT modem by means of a data connection. When using a VSAT modem which is integrated to use LO information transferred via a data connection, the LO must be in the range of 9.6 GHz to 11.3 GHz (Optimum values are 9.75 GHz and 10.75 GHz as these match the physical LNB values). All VSAT modems that can be used with SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku use this approach for selecting the LO frequency, except a COMTECH modem with ROSS server. A COMTECH modem with ROSS server reads switching signals by means of a data connection instead of using voltage and tone signals.

Example configuration for an iDirect i5100 (L-Band range 950 - 1700 MHz)

Ku-Band frequency: 11.7389 GHz
 L-Band frequency: 1638.9 MHz
 LO: 10.1 GHz

Since the LO frequency of 10.1 GHz is in the range of 9.6 GHz to 11.3 GHz, this is a valid set of data. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku will tune to 11.7389 GHz and provide the carrier on the L-Band frequency 1638.9 MHz.

Example configuration for a special VSAT modem (L-Band range 950 - 1450 MHz)

Ku-Band frequency: 12.750 GHz
 L-Band frequency: 1450 MHz
 LO: 11.3 GHz

Since the LO frequency of 11.3 GHz is in the range of 9.6 GHz to 11.3 GHz, this is a valid set of data. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku will tune to 12.750 GHz and provide the carrier on the L-Band frequency 1450 MHz.

4-band switching

When using 4-band switching and a VSAT modem which is integrated with SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku to use voltage and tone for switching, the switching is done according to the following table:

LO frequency	Voltage 11-19 V	Tone 22 kHz	Ku band frequency (L-band 950-2150 MHz)
9.75 GHz	11-14 V	Tone off	10.7-11.9 GHz
10.25 GHz	11-14 V	Tone on	11.2-12.4 GHz
10.75 GHz	16-19 V	Tone off	11.7-12.75 GHz
11.25 GHz	16-19 V	Tone on	12.2-12.75 GHz

Table A-4: 4-band switching

Currently none of the VSAT modems which are integrated with the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku use voltage and tone switching.

A.5 VSAT 8W BUC Data Sheet (Extended), SAILOR 900

Interface	Model	Specification
Input, IF	-	N (50 Ohm)
Output, Ku-band	8 W	WR75 waveguide (39.0 dBm min)
Spectrum	-	Non inverting
LO type	-	Locked to 10 MHz external reference over IF interface or ACU internal
LO frequency	Extended	12.80 GHz
TX ON/OFF	-	10 MHz reference ON/OFF
Cooling	-	External temperature controlled fan - not incl. in BUC

Table A-5: Technical specifications for VSAT 8 W BUC 1/3

Parameter	Condition/remark	Unit	Min.	Typical	Max.
Output frequency range	VSAT Ext. TX	GHz	13.75		14.50
Input (IF) frequency range	Extended	MHz	950		1700
VSWR	Input (10, 950 - 1700 MHz)	-			2.0 : 1
	Output (13.75 - 14.50 GHz)	-			2.0 : 1
Output power at P1dB	Worst case	dBm	39.0		
Output power 10 MHz ref OFF	TX band, at -35 dBm ref.	dBm			-60
Gain (absolute linear)	Over output freq. range	dB	61	65	69
Gain (relative)	Over 500 MHz BW	dB	-2.5	0,0	2.5
Gain (relative)	Over 36 MHz BW	dB	-1.0	0,0	1.0
Spurious	RX band	dBm			-60
	TX band	dBm			-15

Table A-6: Technical specifications for VSAT 8 W BUC 2/3

Parameter	Condition/remark	Unit	Min.	Typical	Max.
Phase noise	10 Hz	dBc/Hz			-50
	100 Hz	dBc/Hz			-60
	1 kHz	dBc/Hz			-70
	10 kHz	dBc/Hz			-80
	100 kHz	dBc/Hz			-90
	1 MHz	dBc/Hz			-110
IMD3	At 2 x +33 dBm carriers	dBc			-26
External ref. freq. (input)	Nominal	MHz		10,000000	
External reference freq. (input)	Deviation	Hz	-100	0	100
Power supply voltage	DC	V	20		50.0
Supply power	DC	W			85

Table A-6: Technical specifications for VSAT 8 W BUC 2/3 (Continued)

Parameter	Condition/remark	Unit	Min.	Typical	Max.
Temperature range	Operation w. external forced cooling				
		°C	-30		75
	Storage	°C	-40		85
Dimensions	L	mm			176
	W	mm			170
	H	mm			102
Weight	Total	g			2790

Table A-7: Technical specifications for VSAT 8 W BUC 3/3

A.6 VSAT 20W BUC Data Sheet (Extended), SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power

Interface	Model	Specification
Input, IF	-	N (50 Ohm)
Output, Ku-band	20 W	WR75 waveguide (43.0 dBm min. $T_{amb} \leq 55^{\circ}\text{C}$)
Spectrum	-	Non inverting
Stability	-	Stable with any passive load on input and output
LO type	-	Locked to 10 MHz external reference over IF interface
LO frequency	Extended	12.80 GHz
TX ON/OFF	-	10 MHz reference ON/OFF
Cooling	-	Internal temperature controlled fan (S)
Protection	-	TX shutdown at over-temperature not required ($>70^{\circ}\text{C}$ ambient air)

Table A-8: SAILOR 900HP: Technical specifications for VSAT 20 W BUC 1/3

Parameter	Condition/remark	Unit	Min.	Typical	Max.
Output frequency range	VSAT Ext. TX	GHz	13.75		14.50
Input (IF) frequency range	Extended	MHz	950		1700
VSWR	Input (10, 950 - 1700 MHz)	-			2.0 : 1
	Output (13.75 - 14.50 GHz)	-			2.0 : 1
Output power at P1dB	Worst case, $T_{amb} \leq 55^{\circ}\text{C}$	dBm	43.0		
	Worst case, $T_{amb} > 55^{\circ}\text{C}$	dBm	42.5		
Output power 10 MHz ref OFF	TX band, at -35 dBm ref.	dBm			-60
Gain (absolute linear)	Over output freq. range, Min.	dB	64	68	
	Over output freq. range, Max.	dB		68	72
Gain (relative)	Over 500 MHz BW	dB	-2.5	0,0	2.5
Gain (relative)	Over 36 MHz BW	dB	-1.0	0,0	1.0
ACPR at Pout 43.0 dBm, 5 Msym/s	8PSK, $\alpha=0.2$, $\Delta f=6\text{Mz}$, $\leq 55^{\circ}\text{C}$	dBc			-24
	8PSK, $\alpha=0.2$, $\Delta f=6\text{Mz}$, $< 55^{\circ}\text{C}$	dBc			-24

Table A-9: SAILOR 900HP: Technical specifications for VSAT 20 W BUC 2/3

Parameter	Condition/remark	Unit	Min.	Typical	Max.
Spurious/harmonics out	RX band 10.70 - 12.75 GHz	dBm			-56
	13.50 - 13.75 GHz band	dBm			-15
	TX band 13.75 - 14.50 GHz	dBm			-15
	14.50 - 14.80 GHz band	dBm			-17
	Carrier ±10 MHz to 9.99 MHz	dBm			-30
	Carrier ±10 MHz to 50 MHz	dBm			-30
	Out of band ^a	dBm			-26
External ref. freq. (input)	Nominal	MHz		10	
External reference freq. (input)	Deviation	Hz	-100	0	100
LO phase noise (output), SSB	10 Hz	dBc/Hz			-50
	100 Hz	dBc/Hz			-60
	1 kHz	dBc/Hz			-70
	10 kHz	dBc/Hz			-80
	199 kHz	dBc/Hz			-90
	≥1 MHz	dBc/Hz			-110

Table A-9: SAILOR 900HP: Technical specifications for VSAT 20 W BUC 2/3 (Continued)

a. Out of band frequencies: 0.10 - 10.70 GHz & 12.75 - 13.50 GHz & 14.80 - 26.00 GHz

Parameter	Condition/remark	Unit	Min.	Typical	Max.
Power supply voltage	DC	V	39.0		50
Supply power	DC	W			185
Temperature range	Operation w. internal forced cooling (no sun)	°C	-30		+70
	Storage	°C	-40		85
Dimensions (incl. connector) overall, fan included (waveguide port on WxH side)	L	mm			190
	W	mm			125
	H	mm			110
Weight, fan included	Total	g	2500		2900

Table A-10: SAILOR 900HP: Technical specifications for VSAT 20 W BUC 3/3

Installation of the dual antenna solution

This appendix has the following sections:

- *Introduction*
- *Installation of the dual antenna solution*
- *Configuration of the dual antenna solution*
- *Flow chart for installation of the dual antenna solution*

B.1 Introduction

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Dual antenna solution from Cobham SATCOM has the following unique features:

- Simple installation due to single cable antenna system.
- Ensures maximum system uptime.
- Fully automatic switching to other VSAT antenna, no user intervention needed.
- Switching upon programmed blocking zones.
- Switching if tracking signal strength drops 4 dB below the signal strength in the idle antenna.
- Switching if the ADU is malfunctioning.
- Configured in minutes, using the built-in web server user interface.

B.2 Installation of the dual antenna solution

B.2.1 System overview

You can use the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku in dual antenna mode with 2 ADUs, 2 ACUs and the dual-antenna accessories kit. The kit consists of two 75 Ohm RF cables, an RF splitter and an RF combiner. In case one antenna enters a blocking zone, the other antenna of the dual-antenna system takes over and the system continues working.

There is a Master ACU and a Slave ACU. The VSAT modem is connected to and configured in the Master ACU. The Slave ACU is configured as a slave unit. It is connected with an Ethernet cable to the Master ACU from which it gets all satellite information. You can use any LAN port as long as the Master and the Slave are in the same subnet.

For remote access connect Master LAN 2 to Slave LAN 2. This leaves LAN 1 on the Master for the VSAT modem control and LAN 1 on the Slave free. An alternative is to connect the VSAT Modem, Master LAN 1, and Slave LAN 1 via an external switch.

The system switches from one antenna to the other based on the programmed blocking zones in the two antennas and actual signal blockages from cranes etc.

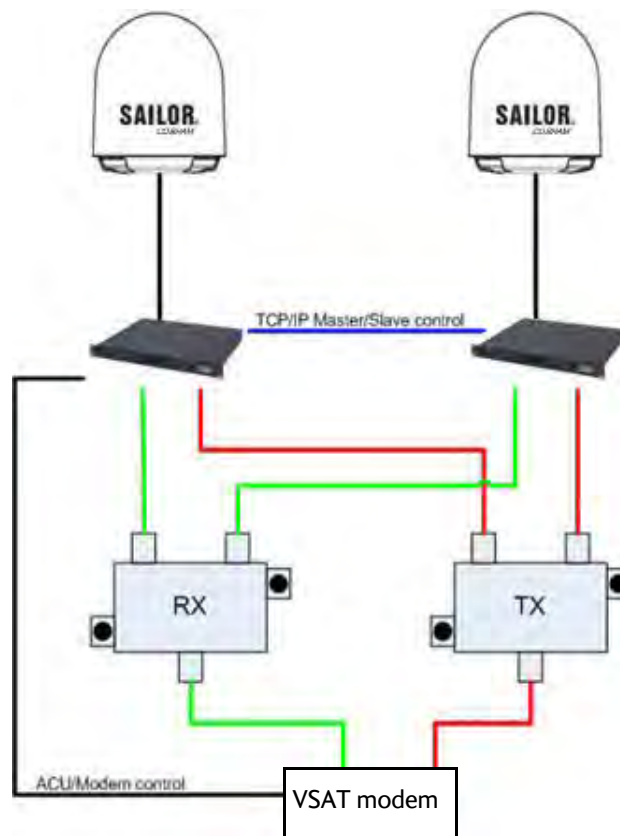


Figure B-1: Dual mode antenna, overview

Important**OPERATION ON INCLINED ORBIT SATELLITES**

Dual SAILOR antenna installations might experience degraded performance when operated on inclined orbit satellites. These satellites change their position during the day. The changed satellite position affects the inactive (passive) antenna, resulting in mis-pointing to the satellite at the time the antenna becomes active.

In a dual antenna configuration, the inactive (passive) antenna points where the satellite was found at start-up or where last tracked while the antenna was active.

The inactive (passive) SAILOR antenna uses the following criteria to dynamically maintain the correct relative azimuth and elevation irrespective the antenna can see the satellite signal or not (open loop algorithm):

1. The NMEA-0183 heading data, which must come from a gyro compass without drift, deviation, speed or latitude errors.
2. The built-in rate sensors, accelerometers and GNSS receiver.
3. The calculated change in azimuth and elevation of the satellite position (Clarke belt) as the vessel moves,

Parts needed

The following parts are needed for the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Dual antenna solution:

- 1 x SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku System (Master System)
- 1 x SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ADU (Slave Above Deck Unit)
- 1 x SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU (Slave Antenna Control Unit)
- 1 x Accessory Kit for Dual Antenna operation
(consists of 2 x RF Splitter/Combiner and 2 x Coax cables with F-connectors)

B.2.2 Installation

To install the dual antennas, do as follows:

1. Install the master ADU, ACU, the RX combiner and the VSAT modem as shown in figure B-2.
2. Install the slave ADU, ACU and the TX splitter as shown below.
3. Provide vessel heading input to the master ACU and slave ACU, see *NMEA 0183 connector* on page 4-3.
4. Connect the cables as shown in the figure and the table below.

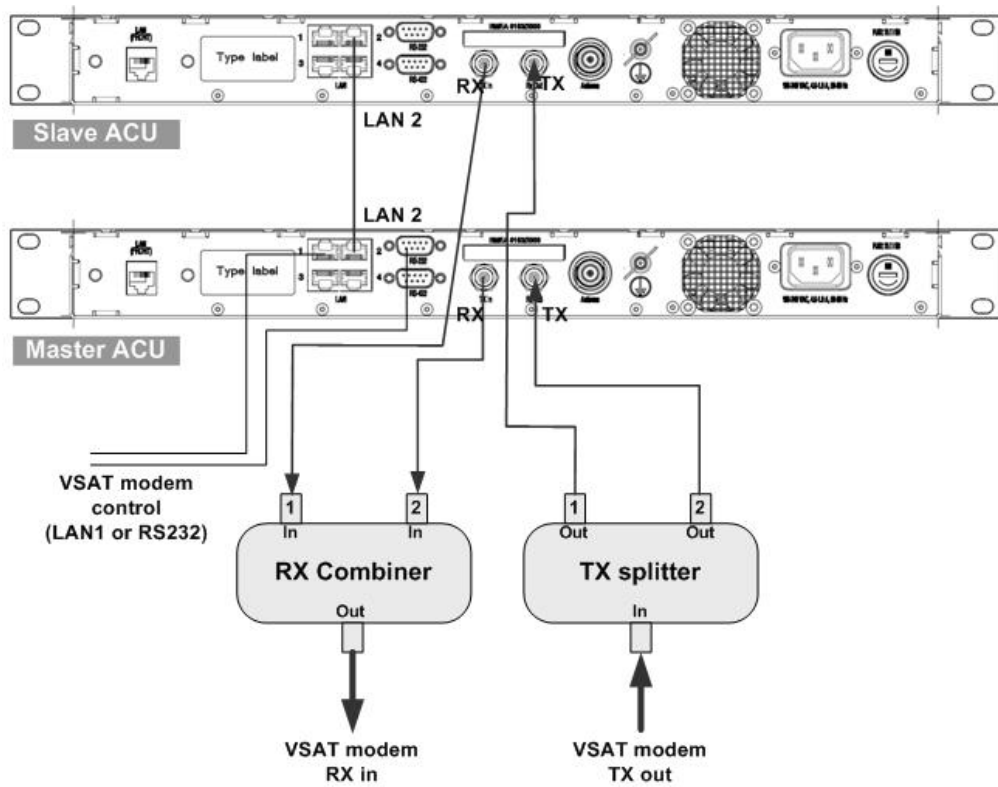


Figure B-2: Dual mode antenna, connecting cables (example)

Connect cables	Purpose
Master ACU LAN to Slave ACU LAN	Master/Slave control
Master ACU LAN port 1 or RS 232 to VSAT modem control	VSAT modem control
Master ACU Rx Out to the Rx combiner input 1	Rx when Master active
Slave ACU Rx Out to the Rx combiner input 2	Rx when Slave active
Rx combiner output to VSAT modem Rx	Rx to VSAT modem
Master ACU Tx In to the Tx splitter output 1	Enabled when Master active
Slave ACU Tx In to the Tx splitter output 2	Enabled when Slave active
Tx splitter input to VSAT modem Tx	Tx from VSAT modem

Table B-1: Dual mode antenna, cabling

B.3 Configuration of the dual antenna solution

B.3.1 Configuration tasks

The following tasks must be taken care of when setting up a dual-antenna system:

- *To configure the Master ACU*
- *To configure the Slave ACU*
- *Blocking zone setup for dual antenna setup*
- *Lineup and commissioning for dual antenna setup*

At the bottom of the DASHBOARD of the web interface there is a section where you can switch over to the other ACU dashboard. Next to **Status** you can see whether the current ACU is active or not.

DASHBOARD			
GNSS position	55.79° N, 12.52° E	ACU part name	TT-7016C
Vessel heading	0.2°	Antenna part name	TT-7009B
Satellite profile	SpeedCast	ACU serial number	81166987
Satellite position	37.5° W	Antenna serial number	80989056
RX polarisation	Vertical	Software version	1.62 build 5
TX polarisation	X-pol	POINTING	
RX RF frequency	12.545020 GHz	Azimuth, elevation geo	235.3° 12.6°
LNB LO frequency	11.250000 GHz	Azimuth, elevation rel	235.1° 12.8°
TX RF frequency	--	Polarisation skew	27.7°
BUC LO frequency	12.800000 GHz	TX	
Tracking RF frequency	12.545020 GHz	BUC TX	On
MODEM		DUAL ANTENNA MASTER	
Model	iDirect Evolution (OpenAMIP)	Status	Active
RX locked status	Locked	Show slave dashboard	
Signal level	347 (pwr)		
RX IF frequency	1295.020000 MHz		
TX IF frequency	0.000000 MHz		
TX allowed	Yes		

Figure B-3: Dual-antenna mode, link on DASHBOARD

The dual-antenna system switches between the 2 antennas in the following scenarios:

- When in a programmed blocking zone.
- When the signal is blocked for more than 2 minutes.
- ADU is malfunctioning.

In the statistics report you can get more detailed information on the dual-antenna mode, see also Table 6-19 on page 6-40.

B.3.2 To configure the Master ACU

Configure the Master ACU exactly the same way as a stand-alone SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system with satellite profiles and VSAT modem profiles. When the Master ACU is configured, do as follows:

1. Go to **SETTINGS > Dual antenna**.
2. Select **Enable antenna system as Master** and click **Apply**.

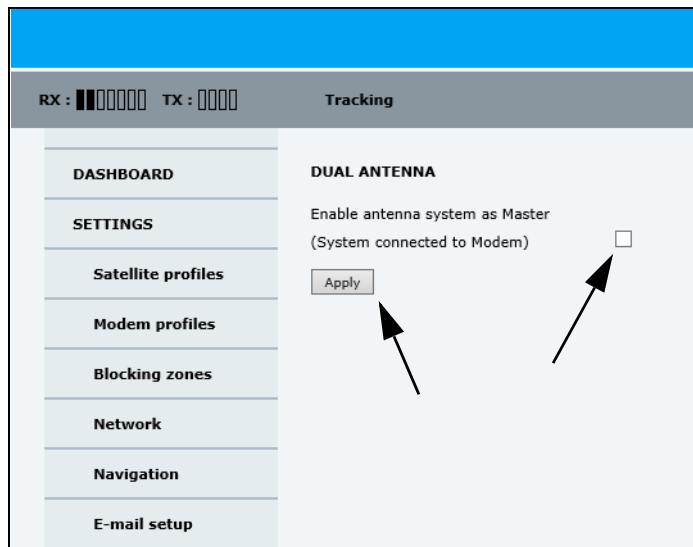


Figure B-4: Enabling dual-antenna mode in Master ACU

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku is now ready to act as Master ACU.

B.3.3 To configure the Slave ACU

The Slave ACU is configured to use the Master ACU as VSAT modem profile. The VSAT modem profile must point to the IP address of the Master ACU, that is the IP address of the LAN port at which the Master/Slave communication cable is connected.

1. Add a specific VSAT modem profile for dual antenna mode, go to **SETTINGS > Modem profiles > New entry**.

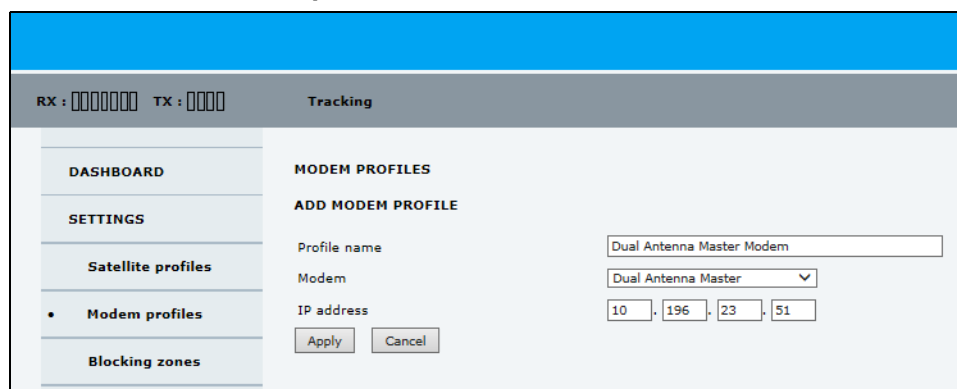


Figure B-5: Dual-antenna mode, add modem profile for slave ACU (example)

2. Enter the profile name, for example Dual Antenna Master Modem.

3. As modem select **Dual Antenna Master**.
4. IP address: IP address of the LAN connector at the Master ACU. See *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Add a satellite profile that uses the modem profile **Dual Antenna Master Modem**, go to **SETTINGS > Satellite profiles > New entry**.

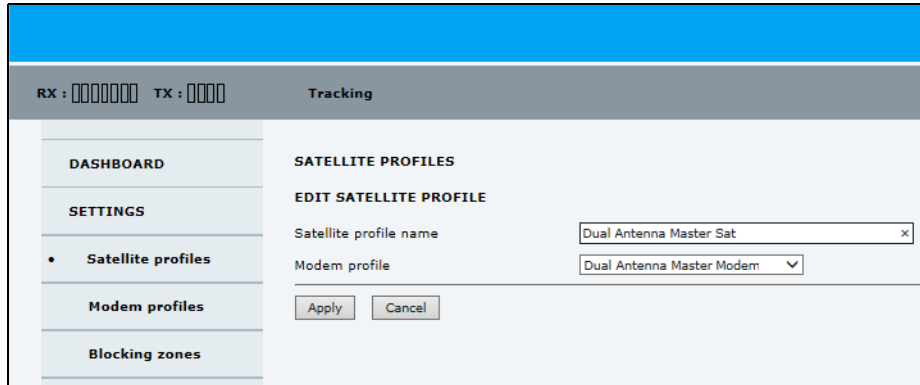


Figure B-6: Dual-antenna mode, add Slave satellite profile

7. Enter the satellite profile name, for example: Dual Antenna Master Sat.
8. As modem profile select **Dual Antenna Master Modem**.
9. Click **Apply**.
10. Go to **SETTINGS > Satellite profiles**.



Figure B-7: Dual-antenna mode, Activate

11. Click **Activate** to activate the satellite profile **Dual Antenna Master Sat**.

B.3.4 Blocking zone setup for dual antenna setup

It is recommended to define the following 3 blocking zones in each SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system:

1. Actual blocking zones on the vessel (No TX)
2. Switching blocking zones (TX allowed)
3. Personnel safety zones (No TX)

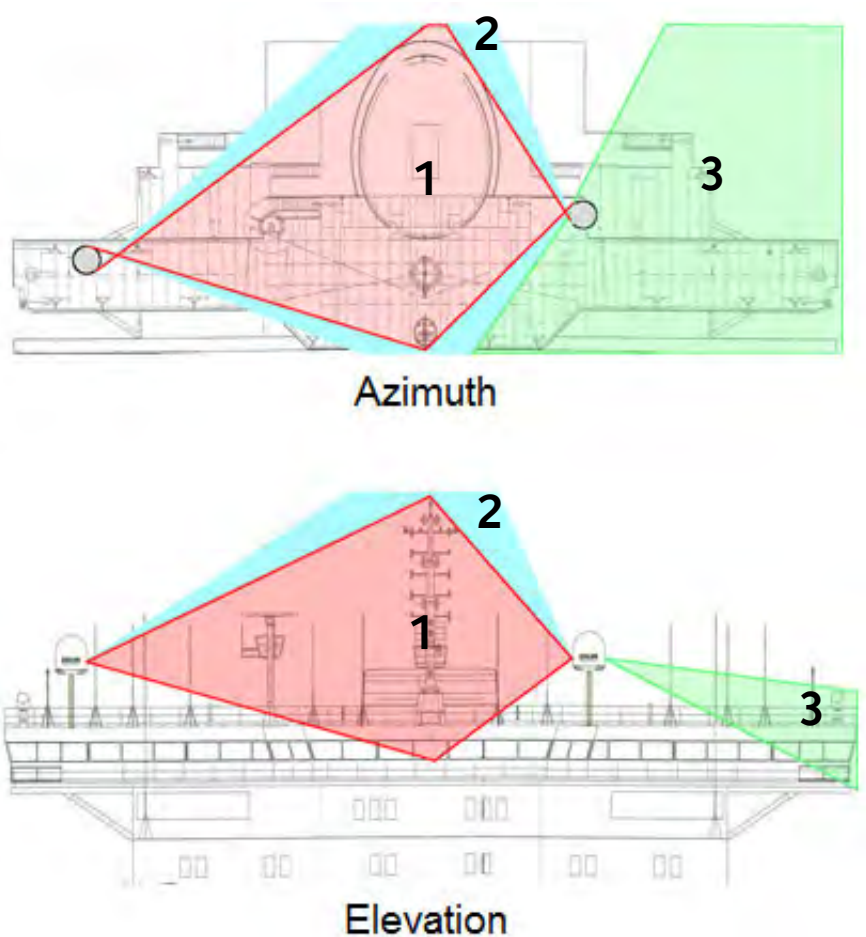


Figure B-8: Dual-antenna mode, blocking zones — azimuth and elevation

For instructions how to set up blocking zones see *To set up blocking zones (RX and TX)* on page 6-31.

B.3.5 Lineup and commissioning for dual antenna setup

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku antenna systems must be lined up and commissioned one by one. The line-up procedure is done for each antenna as it would have been done for a single antenna system. In order to be able to do the line-up for each antenna you must force the dual system to use one or the other antenna at a time. Do as follows:

1. Enter the web interface of the Master ACU, go to the page **SERVICE > Dual antenna mode**.

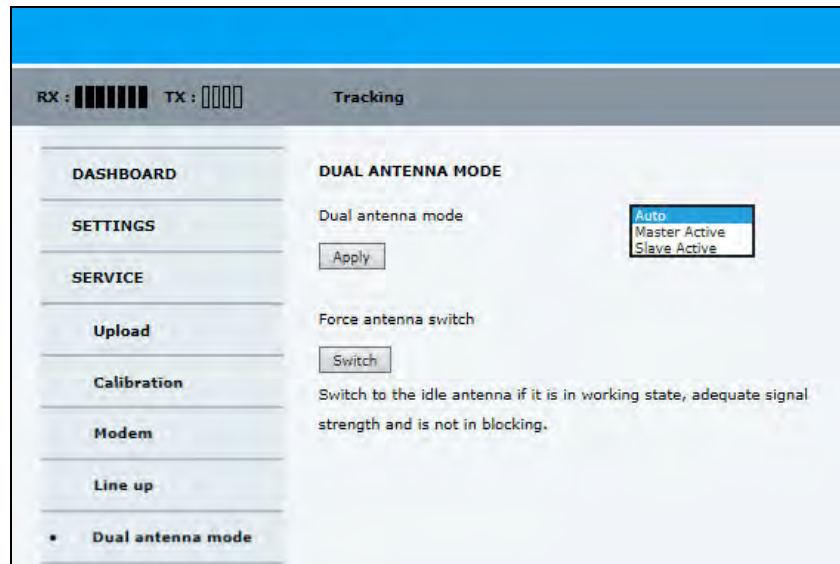


Figure B-9: Dual-antenna mode, line up

2. Set the dual antenna mode to either **Master active** or **Slave active** to force the system to use that antenna until it is changed again or the Master system is rebooted. After reboot the dual antenna mode will be set to **Auto** (default).
3. Make a lineup procedure for both the Master and the Slave ACU as described in *To make a line up procedure* on page 6-16.

B.4 Flow chart for installation of the dual antenna solution

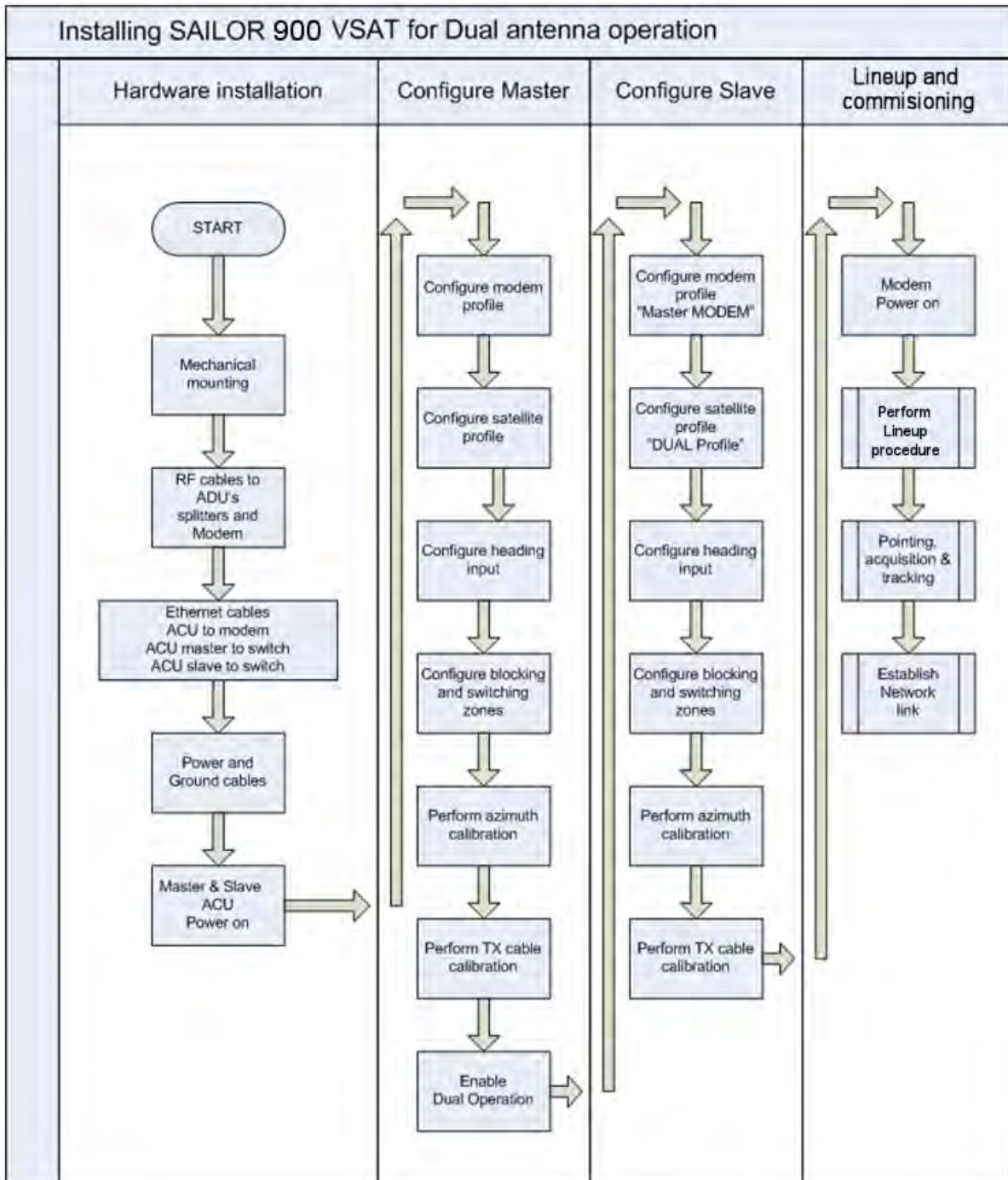


Figure B-10: Flow chart

VSAT modem cables

This appendix contains cable specifications for cables between the ACU and a VSAT modem.

- *Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A*
- *Modem Cable iDirect Serial and RSSI*

C.1 Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A

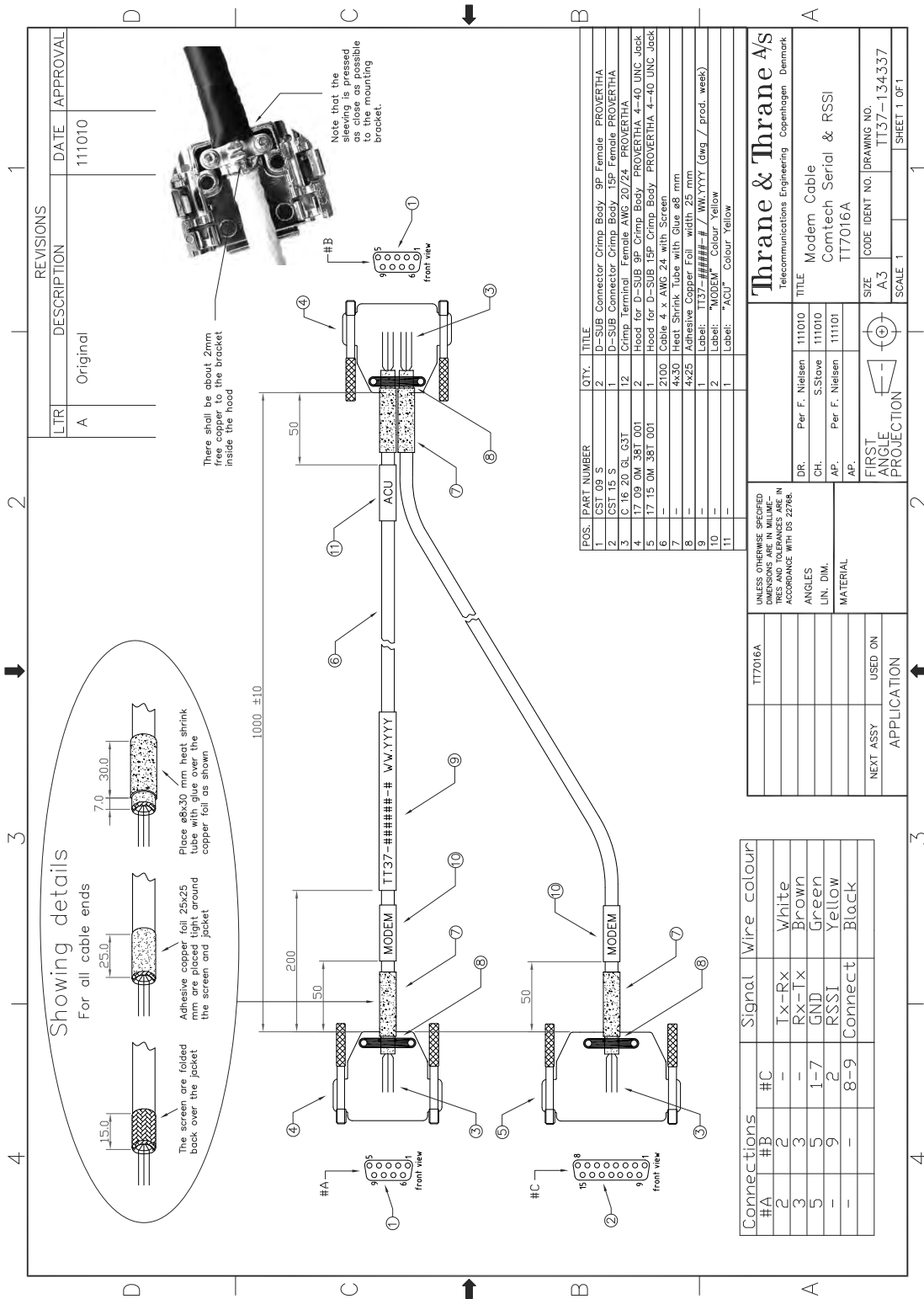


Figure C-1: Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A

C.2 Modem Cable iDirect Serial and RSSI

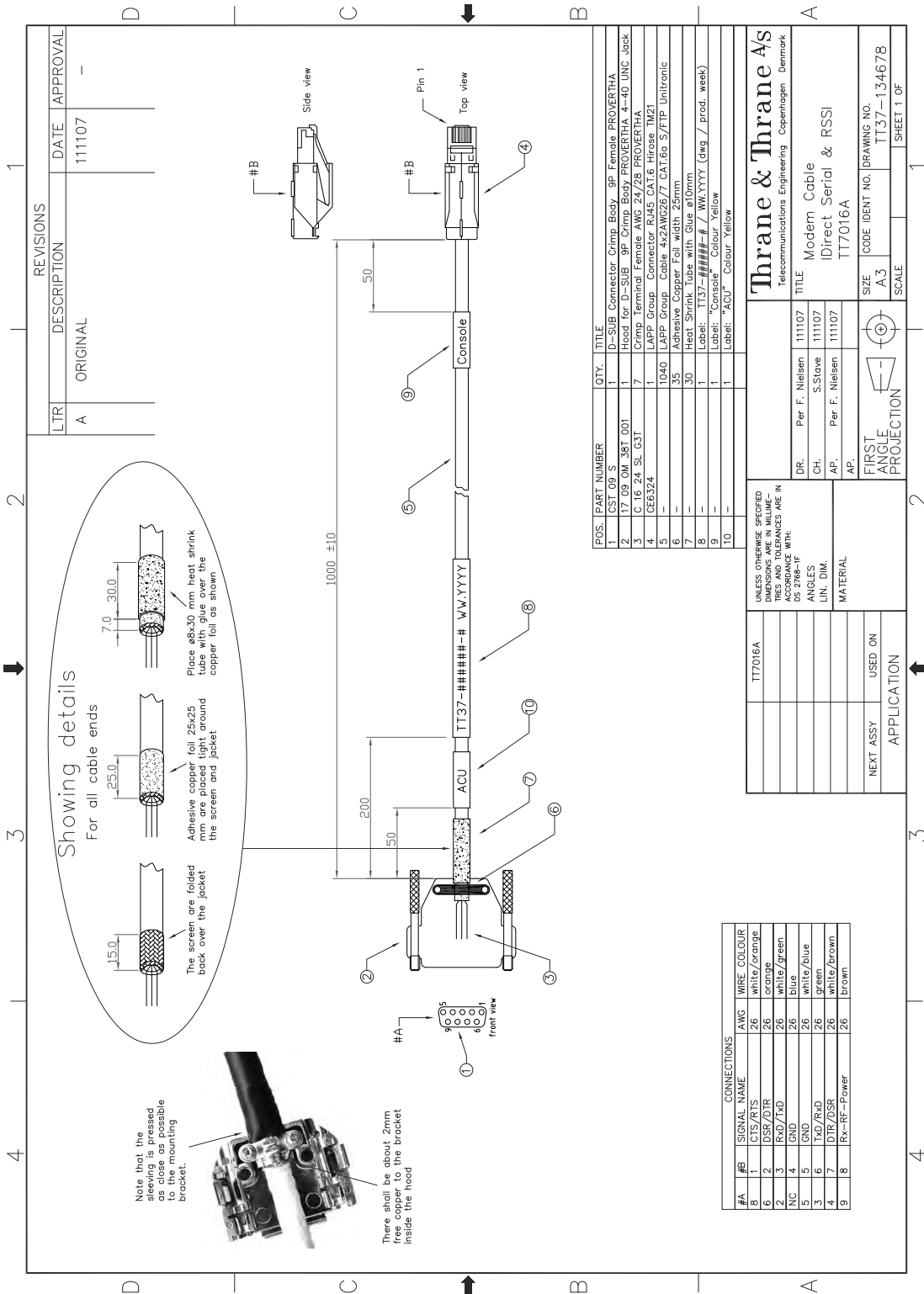


Figure C-2: Modem Cable iDirect Serial and RSSI

VSAT modem settings

In this appendix you find detailed information how to optimize performance in blockage situations and how to set up supported VSAT modems. The appendix has the following sections:

- *Performance optimization for blockage*
- *OpenAMIP setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution*
- *Serial setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution*
- *COMTECH 570L and ROSS box*
- *COMTECH 570L*
- *COMTECH CDM 840*
- *STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem*
- *Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem*
- *Inmarsat G5 modem*
- *Linkway S2 modem*
- *iDirect X7*

D.1 Performance optimization for blockage

D.1.1 Performance of VSAT systems encountering blockage, configured with multiple satellites.

Definition of blockage

In most VSAT installations the VSAT antenna is installed in a position with areas of blockage. Blockage is often caused by the vessel's masts, stacks and other equipment installed on board. During installation the blockage areas should be entered in the web interface, see *To set up blocking zones (RX and TX)* on page 6-31.

When blockage occurs, the ACU can inform the VSAT modem (if the blocking zones have been typed correctly into the ACU web interface). It is often seen that by not informing the VSAT modem of blockage the VSAT system gains a higher uptime, although the quality of the extra gained uptime is not good enough to give the user a stable data connection. Therefore it is not of any value to the user. Another disadvantage of not informing the VSAT modem of blockage is that the VSAT modem does not have the option to switch to a different satellite to avoid the blockage.

VSAT modems can typically¹ only receive one signal from the ACU, which is "TX-mute" / "modem must not transmit", they are therefore not able to perform fast switching, but are limited to use a simple time-out, which is configured as a fixed value in the modem configuration.

The simple time-out means that there is a fixed delay, plus the time needed to acquire another satellite, before there is a chance of regaining good link performance.

If the signal is not sent to the modem, the system can in some cases remain linked and have a higher uptime, but not provide a stable data connection. Such a link is of no value to the subscriber. Not sending the blockage (TX-Mute) signal also extends the period of the poor-quality link, as the VSAT modem is still relying on a time-out before switching to another satellite, and the time-out may be constantly reset by the link coming and going.

Better blockage communication

A major disadvantage of this single signal is that if the VSAT modem has multiple satellites to choose from, then, when selecting a new satellite, the VSAT modem is again relying on the simple time-out. This continues until a satellite with no obstruction in the view from the satellite terminal is selected. If the VSAT modem was able to receive information from the ACU that the view towards the current satellite is blocked, it would be able to choose a visible satellite much faster without the need to wait for multiple time-outs.

Minimum elevation angle

One safe way of getting optimum performance under the current conditions is to switch to a satellite in view as fast as possible. This is done by having well defined satellite parameters in the VSAT modem configuration. It is the VSAT modem that has the task of selecting the correct satellite, and since the VSAT modem is only concerned about the satellite visibility at the current geographic position, it is very important to enter the minimum elevation of a satellite at which a stable link can be established.

It is often seen that the minimum elevation is set to 0 (zero). A setting of 0 is not only in many cases below the usable limit of the satellite, but also a violation against ETSI EN 302 340, where a calculated minimum elevation ranges from 12° to 3° depending on power and bandwidth must be ensured or FCC §25.205 which states the minimum elevation to be 5°. See also the table in the section *Satellite profiles* on page 6-29.

Unless the vessel is operating in international waters with no other options, a minimum elevation of 10° or higher is recommended.

Conclusion

Fewer but well-functioning satellites to choose from give better user performance than having many satellites, which may have a longer uptime but do not provide a stable data connection. In the end it is not the actual uptime the subscriber is concerned about, but it is the uptime where the link gives a stable data connection.

-
1. There are VSAT modems that can interpret more detailed information about blockage from the ACU. This allows for increased performance in the event of blockage.

D.2 OpenAMIP setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution

D.2.1 Protocol and interfaces

Introduction

The following sections describe the protocol and interface between the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU and an iDirect OpenAMIP VSAT modem. OpenAMIP operation is normally used by service providers offering global VSAT service as the protocol supports roaming between satellites (Automatic Beam Switching).

OpenAMIP, an ASCII message based protocol invented and Trademarked by iDirect is a specification for the interchange of information between an antenna controller (ACU) and a VSAT modem (VMU). This protocol allows the VSAT modem to command the ACU to search and lock to a particular satellite as well as allowing exchange of information necessary to permit the VSAT modem to initiate and maintain communication via the antenna and the satellite. In general, OpenAMIP is not intended for any purpose except to permit a modem and the ACU to perform synchronized automatic beam switching.

Thrane & Thrane A/S received OpenAMIP certification for SAILOR 900 from VT iDirect Inc. on 22 September 2011.

Connections

Connect the ACU and iDirect modem with the following cables:

- Ethernet cable for TCP/IP data communication
- RS-232 console cable for signal strength indication (part number: 407090A-020)

Important

It is important to connect this cable to achieve satisfactory acquisition of the satellite. This is due to missing information in the iDirect OpenAMIP software before version 3.1.1.2/13.0.1.2. RSSI information on the dashboard will only be available with this cable connected.

- 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for rx and tx frequencies.

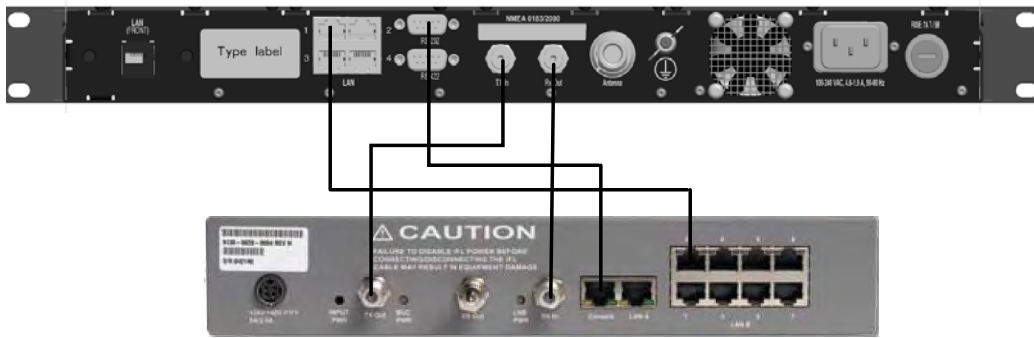


Figure D-1: Connecting iDirect iFINITI 5000 series to the ACU (OpenAMIP)

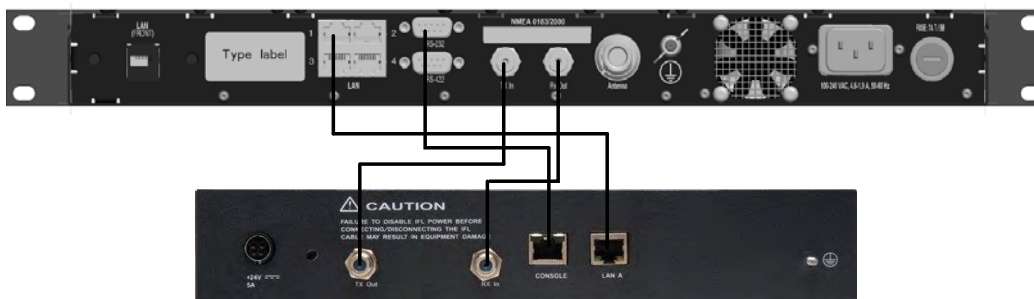


Figure D-2: Connecting iDirect Evolution X5 to the ACU (OpenAMIP)

The pin allocation for the RS-232 Console cable is shown below. See also Appendix C on page D-1 for a cable drawing.

Console port (DTE)	RJ-45 pin	Color code	RJ-45 to DB-9 adapter pin	Console device
RTS	1	Blue	8	CTS
DTR	2	Orange	6	DSR
TxD	3	Black	2	RxD
GND	4	Red	NC	GND
GND	5	Green	5	GND
RxD	6	Yellow	3	TxD
DSC	7	Brown	4	DTR
Rx-RF Power	8	White/Grey	9	--

Table D-1: RS-232 Console cable for iDirect VSAT modem

Protocol

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU supports all OpenAMIP commands except the X command which is optional. All the supported OpenAMIP commands are shown in the following figure.

iDS/iDX Release	Messages Sent from Remote			Options File Group	Messages Sent from Antenna	
	Message	# Parameters	Mapped to Options File Keys		Message	# Parameters
iDX 2.0.x	A		keepalive_interval Default value of 15 seconds. Will not appear in Options file unless overwritten.	[ANTENNA]	a	
	B	2	rx_lcl_osc, tx_lcl_osc	[SATELLITE]		
	H	2	hunt_frequency, hunt_bandwidth	[SATELLITE]		
	K	1	max_skew Maximum skew of the beam short axis to the geosynchronous arc.	[SATELLITE]		
	P	2	polarity, tx_polarity	[SATELLITE]		
	S	3	longitude, max_lat, pol_skew	[SATELLITE]	s	2
	T	2	tx_frequency, tx_bandwidth	[SATELLITE]		
	W	1	latlong_interval Message contains single value in seconds. Does not generate Options file key.	[MOBILE]	w	4

Figure D-3: Supported OpenAMIP commands

Messages sent from VSAT modem	Explanation
S -15.000000 0.000000 0.000000	Longitude, Max_lat, Pol_skew
H 1451.815000 1.905000	Hunt_frequency, Hunt_bandwidth
P H V	Rx_polarity, Tx_polarity
B 11250.000000 12800.00000	Rx_lcl_osc, Tx_lcl_osc
T 1403.290000 0.618000	Tx_frequency, Tx_bandwidth
A 15	Keepalive_interval in mS [ACU: s message]
W 300	latlong_interval in seconds [ACU: w message]
L 1 1	Rx lock, Tx allowed
K 90.000000	Max_skew

Table D-2: Messages sent from the VSAT modem to the ACU (examples)

Messages sent from the ACU to the VSAT modem	Explanation
s 1 1	Functional, Tx OK
w 1 55.794010 12.52272 985523005	GPS valid, Latitude, Longitude, Time

Table D-3: Messages sent from the ACU to the VSAT modem (examples)

Note The iDirect modems only sends the satellite information once when booting. If the ACU has not received the information for some reason, the system cannot point. In that case the modem will automatically boot after 5 minutes and send the satellite information again.

The signal strength from the modem is measured on RS-232 pin 9. It is a DC voltage in the range of 0 - 5 VDC.

Ranges for signal strength	
VDC	Antenna status
0-2.5	RF energy is detected, but from the wrong satellite.
2.6-5.0	Carrier lock, correct satellite.

Table D-4: Ranges for signal strength for iDirect OpenAMIP VSAT modem

The signal strength displayed web interface on the Dashboard as 0 – 500. The minimum value for an Internet connection is 250 - 260.

D.2.2 Sample options file

This section presents a portion of a sample options file with OpenAMIP parameters that must be defined for SAILOR VSAT. Each parameter is in bold and commented.

[ANTENNA]

```

addr = 10.1.6.2                               #!/(ACU LAN1 IP setting)!
connect_timeout = 30
dedicated_interface = ixp0
manufacturer = OpenAMIP
max_skew = 90.000000
model = OpenAMIP
port = 2000                                   #!/(ACU Modem Profile setting)!
    
```

[ETH0_1]

```

address = 10.1.6.1
netmask = 255.255.255.128                   #!/(ACU LAN1 subnet setting)!
rip_enabled = 0
web_server_enabled = 0
    
```

[FREQ_TRANS]

```

down_translation = 11300.000000
    
```



```

up_translation = 12800.000000      #!/!(SAILOR VSAT, BUC LO)!!

[MOBILE]

gps_input = 2                      #!/!(2 = GPS via OpenAMIP)!!
gps_validation_active = 1
init_tx_power_offset = -10.000000  #!/!(SAILOR VSAT)!!
is_mobile = 1                      #!/!(1 = Maritime)!!
latlong_acq_interval = 300
latlong_fail_interval = 10
latlong_interval = 300
tx_handshake_enabled = 0          #!/!(SAILOR VSAT)!!

[ODU]

lnb_dc_voltage = 18
lnb_tone_enable = 0
music_present = 0
odu_disable_tx_pwm = 0
odu_rx_10_mhz = 0
odu_rx_dc_power = 0
odu_tx_10_mhz = 1                  #!/!(SAILOR VSAT)!!
odu_tx_dc_power = 0

[SATELLITE]

channelname = E36B - Maritime
hunt_bandwidth = 0.000000
hunt_frequency = 1233.660000
longitude = 35.900000
max_lat = 0.000000
max_skew = 90.000000
min_look_angle = 0.000000
name = E36B
noise_reference_frequency = 0.000000
pol_skew = 0.000000
polarity = V
rx_lcl_osc = 11300.000000
skew_margin = 90.000000
tx_bandwidth = 0.000000
tx_frequency = 1234.560000        #!/!(Tx freq. for best performance)!!
tx_lcl_osc = 12800.000000        #!/!(SAILOR VSAT, 12.8 GHz BUC LO)!!
tx_polarity = X

[UCP]

max_power_level_in_db = -5.000000  #!/!(S900 VSAT P1dB = -5.0 dBm)
                                       #!/!(S800 VSAT 6W P1dB = -6.2 dBm)
power_uplink_control_processing = 1

```

The option file must use following information:

Section	Requirements
[SATELLITE]	<p>The modem provides RX and TX frequency information via a data connection to the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.</p> <p>The single-cable solution makes it possible to configure the VSAT modem to use any LO frequency in the range from 9.6 GHz to 11.3 GHz. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku will tune to the correct Ku-Band frequency and provide the correct L-Band frequency to the VSAT modem.</p> <p>Example: “rx_lcl_osc = 11250.000000”</p> <p>SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku has an extended 8 Watt BUC with LO up conversion frequency of 12.8 GHz.</p> <p>— Example: “tx_lcl_osc = 12800.000000”</p> <p>Note: SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku supports any LNB frequency due to the 1-cable design.</p>
[MOBILE]	<p>The iDirect modem must be set to mobile unit and receive the GPS information from the ACU with the command “w <Valid> <Lat> <Lon> <Time>”.</p> <p>Example: “is_mobile = 1”</p> <p>Tx handshake must not be enabled in the iDirect modem.</p> <p>Example: “tx_handshake_enabled = 0”</p>
[ODU]	<p>The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can work either using the Rx or Tx 10 MHz reference signals provided by the modem or using its own built-in 10 MHz reference signal. It is recommended to use the Tx 10 MHz reference signal from the modem. See also <i>Modem profiles</i> on page 6-26.</p> <p>Example: “odu_rx_10_mhz = 1”</p> <p>The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku needs the Tx 10 MHz reference signal in order to allow TX ON.</p> <p>Example: “odu_tx_10_mhz = 1”</p>

Table D-5: Information in the VSAT modem option file

D.2.3 Configuration example (OpenAMIP)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web interface are shown in the figures below. Add a modem profile (**SETTINGS > Modem profiles**) as shown below

MODEM PROFILES

ADD MODEM PROFILE

Profile name: iDirect Evolution (Open AMIP)

Modem: iDirect Evolution (OpenAMIP)

10 MHz reference: Internal - ACU

Port: 2000

Apply Cancel

Figure D-4: VSAT modem profile, OpenAMIP (example)

Add a satellite profile (**SETTINGS > Satellite profiles**) as shown below.

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name: VSAT Global

Modem profile: iDirect Evolution (OpenAMIP)

Elevation cutoff: 10.000 °

TRACKING

Tracking type: Narrow band

RX frequency: Modem User defined

Apply Cancel

Figure D-5: Satellite profile, OpenAMIP (example)

Simple OpenAMIP protocol in iDS 8.0.2.7 is **NOT** supported by the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.
Full OpenAMIP protocol from iDX 2.0 and up is supported by the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.

D.2.4 Troubleshooting

It is expected that the modem has been connected with cables to the ACU and that an iDirect OpenAMIP modem profile and satellite profile have been configured in the web server of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku and has been activated. For further details see *Configuration example (OpenAMIP)* on page D-9.

It is recommended to connect the service PC to LAN port 2 of the ACU in order to have access to the web server of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku and IP connection to the attached iDirect OpenAMIP modem.

A telnet or ssh client and Internet browser is needed in order to go through the troubleshooting guidelines. It is recommended to use the telnet/ssh client program called PuTTY, which is available for free on the Internet (<http://www.putty.org/>).

1. Default login to iDirect modems are: User name: admin, Password: P@55w0rd!
2. Every time a setting is changed in the iDirect modem, it must be stored in flash using the following command line command:
`options flash`
3. After changing a setting and storing the new setting the modem has to boot its application in order to read and use the new setting. This is done with the command line command:
`reset application`

The iDirect options file is divided into sections; the section name is always CAPITAL letters. Each section has several parameters, and each parameter has a value. See the following example:

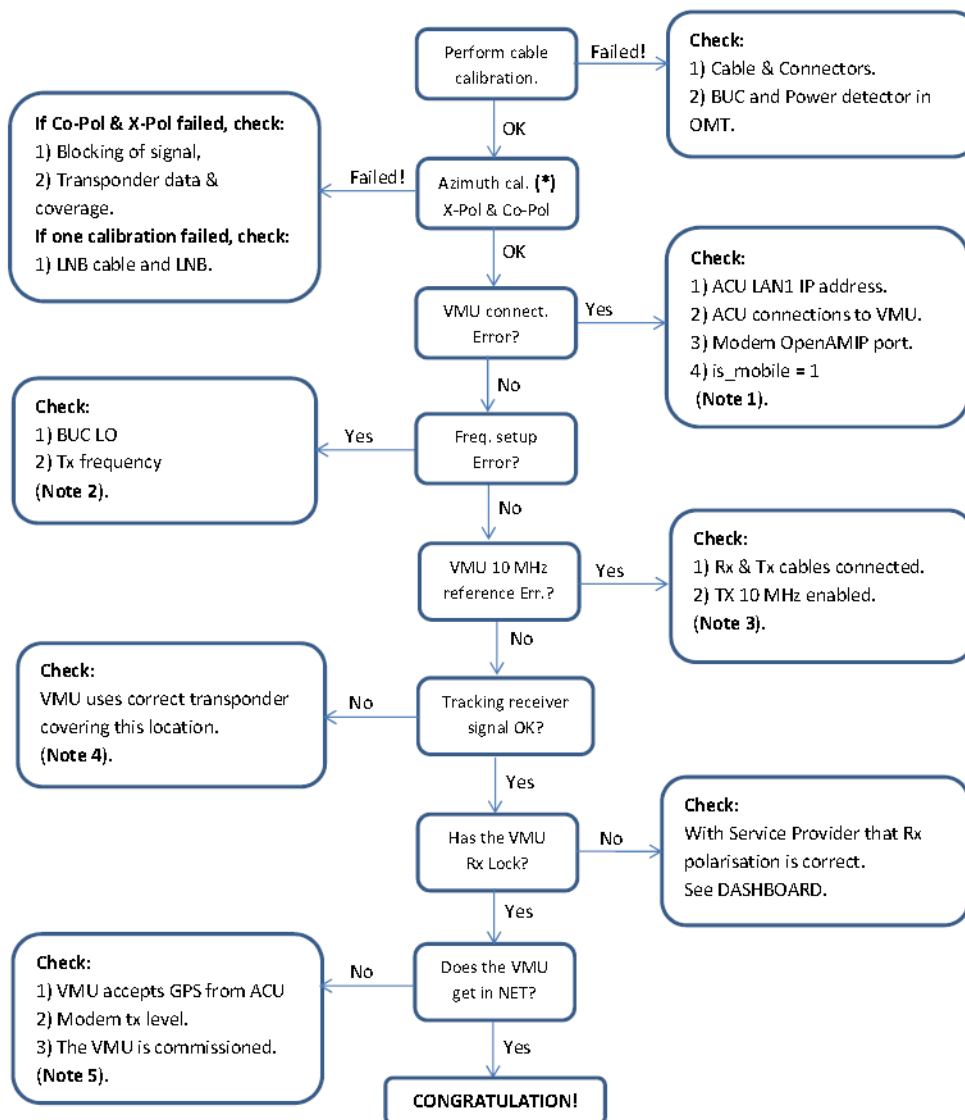
```
[MOBILE]
  gps_input = 2
  init_tx_power_offset = 0.000000
  is_mobile = 1
  latlong_interval = 60
  tx_handshake_enabled = 0
```

To change a setting in the MOBILE section use the `options set` command. See example of command here:

```
options set MOBILE gps_input 2
```

Note that setting the `gps_input` parameter to value 2 is written without an equal sign but only with a space character between parameter name and the value.

You can use the following flow chart and the instructions in the notes later in this appendix.



* Use same transponder polarity with both calibrations.

Figure D-6: iDirect OpenAMIP troubleshooting

Note 1: Connect to modem with Telnet or serial and issue following commands:

```

options show ANTENNA
Check: IP address, port # and manufacturer = OpenAMIP.
options show MOBILE
Check: is_mobile = 1
  
```

Note 2: Connect to modem with telnet and issue command:

```

options show SATELLITE
Check: tx_lcl_osc = 12800.000000,
Check: tx_frequency is between: 950.000000 to 1700.000000
Check: rx_lcl_osc + hunt_frequency is between: 10.7 GHz to 12.75 GHz
  
```

Note 3: Connect to the modem with Telnet and issue commands:

```
options show ODU
Check: odu_tx_10_mhz = 1
options show MOBILE
Check: tx_handshake_enabled = 0
```

Note 4: Connect to the modem with Telnet and issue command:

```
beamselector list
```

Write down the transponder number for one of the beams that has line of sight.
Use the command: beamselector switch <number> -f to force the VSAT modem to use this transponder. E.g:

```
beamselector switch 323 -f
```

Use the command: beamselector lock to lock the VSAT modem to this transponder and stay there (until power cycle or reset application).

Note 5: Connect to the modem with Telnet and issue commands:

```
options show MOBILE
Check: gps_input = 2
tx power
```

Try to increase the tx power step by step up to max. -5 dBm, which is around SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku P1dB level. E.g. tx power -10

Examples of commands

```
options set SATELLITE tx_frequency 1450
options set MOBILE gps_input 2
options set MOBILE is_mobile 1
options set MOBILE tx_handshake_enabled 0
options set ODU odu_tx_10_mhz 1
options flash
```

If this fails then the options file is write protected!
Change disable_options_flash_command = 0 first!

```
options set OPTIONS_FILE disable_options_flash_command 0
reset application
```

Starts the VSAT modem application (soft boot)

- Notice that changing options file locally can help determine wrong settings. The settings will probably be changed back to original settings when the VSAT modem get synchronized with the hub.
- Tell the NOC about the faulty settings so they can correct configuration.

D.3 Serial setup for iDirect iNFINITI & Evolution

D.3.1 Protocol and interfaces

Introduction

The following sections describe the protocol and interface between the ACU and an iDirect Serial modem. Serial operation is normally used by service providers offering regional VSAT service.

Connections

Connect the ACU and iDirect modem with the following cables:

- RS-232 console cable for control communication
- 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for rx and tx frequencies.

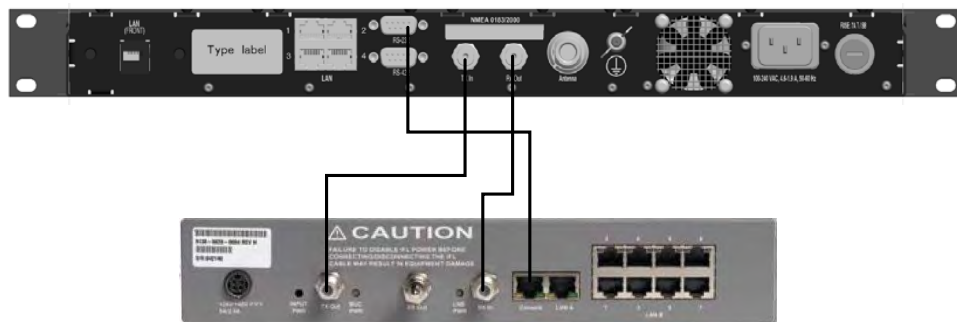


Figure D-7: Connecting iDirect iNFINITI 5000 series to the ACU (Serial)

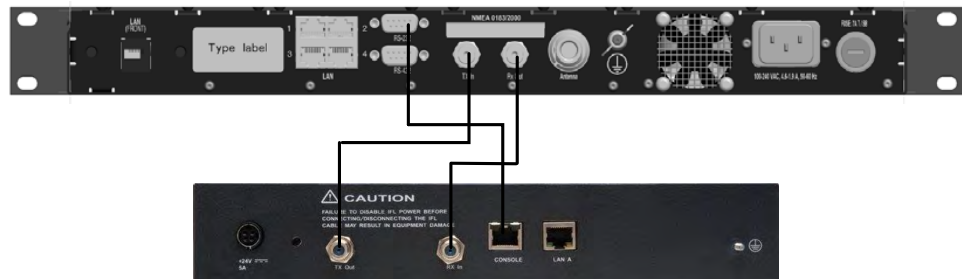


Figure D-8: Connecting iDirect Evolution X5 to the ACU (Serial)

The pin allocation for the RS-232 Console cable is shown in Table D-1 on page D-4. See also Appendix C for a cable drawing.

D.3.2 Console port settings

The iDirect modem must be configured to use following console port settings:

- Baud rate: 4800 or 9600
- Data bits: 8
- Parity: None
- Stop bit: 1

Passwords

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU will log in to the modem using root and user passwords. The default passwords are:

- Root: P@55w0rd!
- User: iDirect

Supported commands

After login to the modem the ACU will issue commands to the modem every second. The following commands are supported by the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku ACU:

- rx snr
- options show FREQ_TRANS
- rx freq
- tx freq
- latlong <lat> <long>

The signal strength command: rx snr is issued every 2 seconds. The rest of the commands are issued one by one every 2 seconds between each signal strength command. Meaning each of the other commands is issued every 8 seconds.

The signal strength in the ACU display and web interface is shown as dB., e.g: 8.5 dB. The minimum value for Internet connection is around 2-3 dB.

VSAT modem option file

The option file of the VSAT modem must also include the following information:

Section	Description
Satellite information	Receive frequency of the transponder. Used with “rx freq” command Transmit frequency if known otherwise just a dummy tx frequency (e.g. 1.450 MHz). Used with “tx freq” command.
SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku information	The modem provides RX and TX frequency information via a data connection to the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku. The single-cable solution makes it possible to configure the VSAT modem to use any LO frequency in the range from 9.6 GHz to 11.3 GHz. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku will tune to the correct Ku-Band frequency and provide the correct L-Band frequency to the VSAT modem. The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku has an extended 8 Watt BUC with LO up conversion frequency of 12.8 GHz.
GPS	The iDirect modem must be set to mobile unit and receive the GPS information from the ACU with the command “latlong <lat> <long>”. Tx handshake must be disabled in the iDirect modem.
Rx 10 MHz	The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku can work either using the Rx or Tx 10 MHz reference signals provided by the modem or using its own built-in 10 MHz reference signal. It is recommended to use the Tx 10 MHz reference signal from the modem. See also <i>Modem profiles</i> on page 6-26.

Table D-6: Requirements for VSAT modem option file, Serial

Section	Description
Tx 10 MHz	The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku needs the Tx 10 MHz reference signal in order to allow TX ON.

Table D-6: Requirements for VSAT modem option file, Serial (Continued)

D.3.3 Configuration example (Serial)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web interface are shown in the figures below. Add a modem profile (**SETTINGS > Modem profiles**) as shown below

Figure D-9: Modem profile, Serial (example)

Add a satellite profile (**SETTINGS > Satellite profiles**) as shown below.

Figure D-10: Satellite profile, Serial (example)

D.4 COMTECH 570L and ROSS box

D.4.1 Protocols and interfaces

The following sections describe how to connect an ACU, a COMTECH570L VSAT modem, a ROSS box and an Ethernet switch.

Connections

Connect the ACU and COMTECH 570L, ROSS box and Ethernet switch with the following cables:

- Ethernet cables for TCP/IP data communication (x3)
- RS-232 console cable
- 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for rx and tx frequencies.

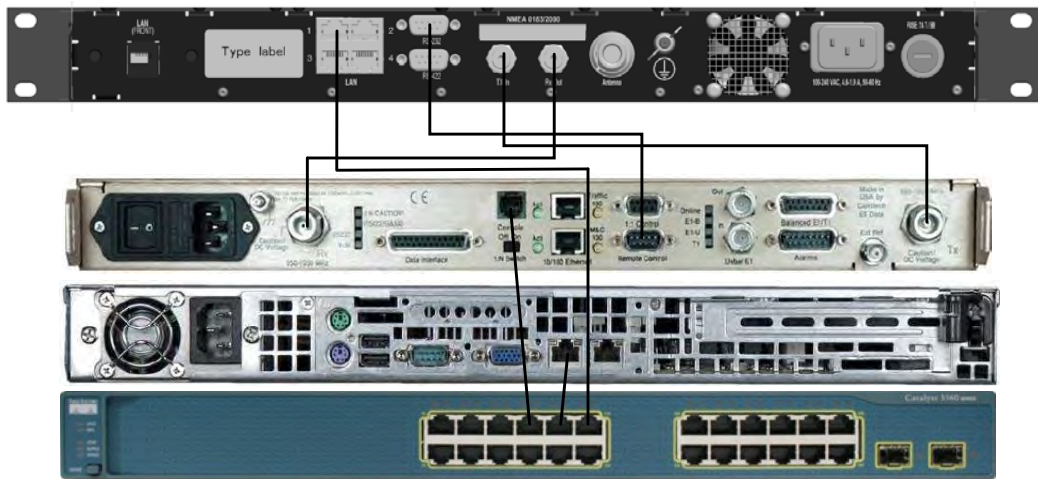


Figure D-11: Connecting COMTECH 570L and ROSS box to the ACU (example)

See also cable specifications *Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A* on page C-2.

D.4.2 Configuration example (COMTECH 570L and ROSS)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web interface are shown in the figures below. Add a modem profile (**SETTINGS > Modem profiles**) as shown below

MODEM PROFILES

EDIT MODEM PROFILE

Profile name: Comtech CDM 570L with ROSS

Modem: COMTECH 570L and ROSS

This profile is used on: 1 Satellite profile

Baud rate: 9600 Baud

10 MHz reference: External - VMU Tx

Apply Cancel

Figure D-12: Modem profile, COMTECH 570L and ROSS (example)

Add a satellite profile (**SETTINGS > Satellite profiles**) as shown below.

SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name: VSAT Global

Modem profile: Comtech CDM 570L with ROSS

Maximum inclination: 0.000 °

Elevation cutoff: 10.000 °

TRACKING

Tracking type: Narrow band

RX frequency: Modem User defined

Apply Cancel

Figure D-13: Satellite profile, COMTECH 570L and ROSS (example)

D.5 COMTECH 570L

D.5.1 Protocol and interfaces

The following sections describe how to connect the ACU to a COMTECH 570L VSAT modem.

Protocol

The ACU supports 4800 or 9600 baud on the serial port. You can set the baud rate of the COMTECH 570L at its front MMI.

The ACU issues the following commands on the serial interface to the COMTECH 570L modem:

- 0000/EBN?
- 0000/TFQ?
- 0000/LLO?
- 0000/BLO?
- 0000/RFQ?

An example of the serial communication between the ACU and the COMTECH 570L modem is shown below:

```
0000/EBN?  
0000EBN=11.8  
0000/TFQ?  
0000/TFQ=1310.7956  
0000/EBN?  
0000/EBN=11.8  
0000/LLO?  
0000/LLO=10000+  
0000/EBN?  
0000/EBN=11.9  
0000/BLO?  
0000/BLO=12800-  
0000/EBN?  
0000/EBN=11.8  
0000/RFQ?  
0000/RFQ=1367.5500
```

Command	Description
EBN?	This command is used to show the signal strength in the web interface and on the display of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku to determine if the COMTECH 570L modem is in Rx Lock. The signal strength goes from 0dB - 16dB, +16dB indicates a signal greater than 16dB, 99.9dB indicates no Rx Lock.
TFQ?	TFQ (Transmit Frequency) is used to calibrate the Tx chain in real time, in order to have same output power independent of frequency, temperature and antenna cable length.
LLO?	LLO (LNB LO) is used to set up the LNB LO frequency for the system. All LNB LO frequencies are supported by SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.
BLO?	BLO (BUC LO) is used to read the BUC LO. This makes the ADU compatible with future SAILOR VSAT products using a different BUC LO.
RFQ?	RFQ (Receive Frequency) is used as tracking frequency for VSAT.

Table D-7: Communication, COMTECH 570L

Note | The BUC LO (BLO) must always be 12800 MHz for SAILOR 800 & 900 VSAT.

Connections

Connect the ACU and the COMTECH 570L with the following cables:

- Standard RS-232 serial cable (using 300KHz Narrow Band tracking receiver)
- Or COMTECH Serial & RSSI cable (using Modem RSSI tracking)
- 2 pcs. 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for rx and tx frequencies.

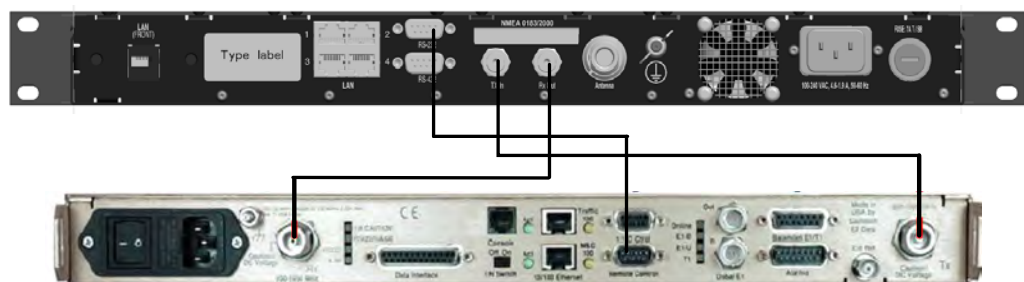


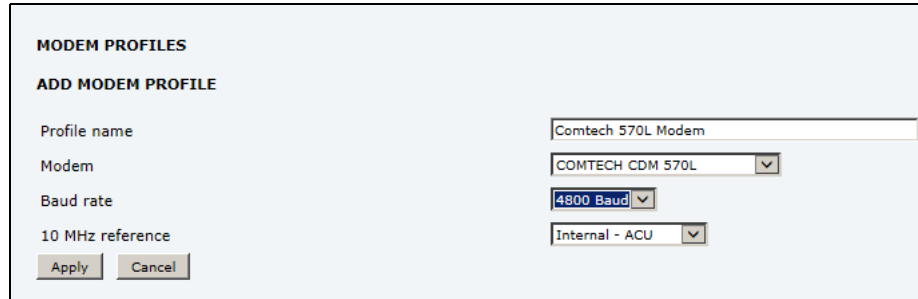
Figure D-14: Connecting COMTECH 570L to the ACU (example)

In most cases it is recommended to use the antenna that is built-in in the 300 kHz narrow band tracking receiver to track the satellite, and you can connect the ACU to the VSAT modem with a standard RS-232 serial cable.

For Modem RSSI tracking use a cable according to the specifications at *Modem Cable COMTECH Serial & RSSI TT7016A* on page C-2 (Cobham part number: 407090A-021).

D.5.2 Configuration example (COMTECH 570L)

Examples of the modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web interface are shown in the figures below. Add a modem profile (**SETTINGS > Modem profiles**) as shown below



MODEM PROFILES

ADD MODEM PROFILE

Profile name: Comtech 570L Modem

Modem: COMTECH CDM 570L

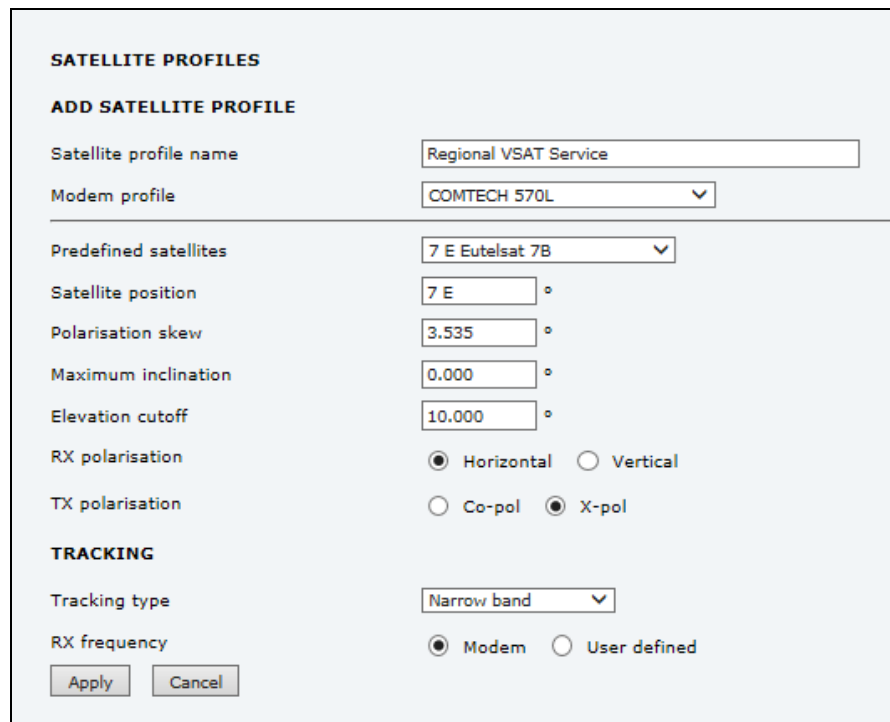
Baud rate: 4800 Baud

10 MHz reference: Internal - ACU

Apply Cancel

Figure D-15: VSAT modem profile, COMTECH 570L (example)

Add a satellite profile (**SETTINGS > Satellite profiles**) as shown below.



SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name: Regional VSAT Service

Modem profile: COMTECH 570L

Predefined satellites: 7 E Eutelsat 7B

Satellite position: 7 E °

Polarisation skew: 3.535 °

Maximum inclination: 0.000 °

Elevation cutoff: 10.000 °

RX polarisation: Horizontal Vertical

TX polarisation: Co-pol X-pol

TRACKING

Tracking type: Narrow band

RX frequency: Modem User defined

Apply Cancel

Figure D-16: Satellite profile, COMTECH 570L (example)

D.6 COMTECH CDM 840

D.6.1 Protocol and interfaces

The following sections describe how to connect the ACU to a COMTECH CDM 840 VSAT modem.

Protocol

The COMTECH CDM 840 modem uses 38400 baud on the RS-232 serial port.

The ACU issues the following commands on the serial interface to the COMTECH CDM 840 modem:

- 0000/ESN?
- 0000/TFQ?
- 0000/RFQ?

An example of the serial communication between the ACU and the COMTECH CDM 840 modem is shown below:

```

0/ESN?
0000/ESN=+11.1
0/TFQ?
0000/TFQ=1205.0000
0/ESN?
0000/ESN=+11.3
0/RFQ?
0000/RFQ=01091.0970
0/ESN?
0000/ESN=+11.3
0/TFQ?
0000/TFQ=1205.0000

```

Command	Description
ESN?	This command is used to show the signal strength in the web interface and on the display of the VSAT to determine if the COMTECH CDM 840 modem is in Rx Lock. The signal strength goes from 0dB - 16dB, +16dB indicates a signal greater than 16dB, 99.9dB indicates no Rx Lock.
TFQ?	TFQ (Transmit Frequency) is used to calibrate the Tx chain in real time, in order to have same output power independent of frequency, temperature and antenna cable length.
RFQ?	RFQ (Receive Frequency) is used as tracking frequency for the VSAT.

Table D-8: Communication, COMTECH CDM 840

Connections

Connect the ACU and the COMTECH CDM 840 with the following cables:

- Standard RS-232 serial cable (using Modem RSSI tracking)
- 2 pcs. 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for rx and tx frequencies.

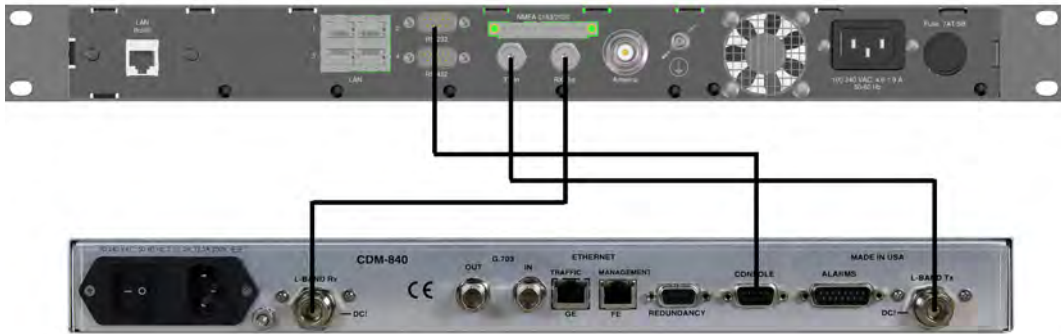


Figure D-17: Connecting COMTECH CDM 840 to the ACU (example)

In most cases it is recommended to use the antenna that is built-in in the 300 kHz narrow band tracking receiver to track the satellite, and you can connect the ACU to the VSAT modem with a standard RS-232 serial cable.

D.6.2 Configuration example (COMTECH CDM 840)

Examples of the modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web interface are shown in the figures below. Add a modem profile (**SETTINGS > Modem profiles**) as shown below

MODEM PROFILES

ADD MODEM PROFILE

Profile name

Modem

Baud rate

10 MHz reference

Figure D-18: VSAT modem profile, COMTECH CDM 840 (example)

Note

RX, TX and BUC LO frequencies must be programmed in the COMTECH CDM 840 modem in advance. See the documentation for your COMTECH CDM 840 modem.

Add a satellite profile (**SETTINGS > Satellite profiles**) as shown below.

SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name: Regional VSAT Service

Modem profile: COMTECH CDM 840

Load modem configuration: None

Predefined satellites: 7 E Eutelsat 7B

Satellite position: 7 E °

Polarisation skew: 3.535 °

Maximum inclination: 0.000 °

Elevation cutoff: 10.000 °

RX polarisation: Horizontal Vertical

TX polarisation: Co-pol X-pol

LNB LO frequency: 0.000000 GHz

TRACKING

Tracking type: Narrow band

RX frequency: Modem User defined

Apply Cancel

Figure D-19: Satellite profile, COMTECH CDM 840 (example)

Note The LNB LO frequency must be entered manually for the respective VSAT service.

The COMTECH CDM 840 supports saving and loading of up to 10 configuration sets.

- To save a configuration, use the COMTECH CDM 840 web interface or serial command interface.
- To load an existing configuration, select the respective configuration index ranging from 1 to 10 in the satellite profile (see Figure D-20 below). Selecting an empty configuration index has no effect.

SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name: Regional VSAT Service

Modem profile: COMTECH CDM 840

Load modem configuration: **None**
Configuration 1
Configuration 2
Configuration 3
Configuration 4
Configuration 5
Configuration 6
Configuration 7
Configuration 8
Configuration 9
Configuration 10

Predefined satellites: 7 E Eutelsat 7B

Satellite position: 7 E °

Polarisation skew: 3.535 °

Maximum inclination: 0.000 °

Elevation cutoff: 10.000 °

RX polarisation: Horizontal Vertical

TX polarisation: Co-pol X-pol

LNB LO frequency: 0.000000 GHz

TRACKING

Tracking type: Narrow band

RX frequency: Modem User defined

Apply Cancel

Figure D-20: Satellite profile, COMTECH CDM 840, load configuration (example)

D.7 STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem

D.7.1 Interfaces and VSAT modem configuration

The following sections describe how to connect an ACU to an STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem. The STM SatLink 2900 and the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku are fully integrated and require almost no user setup.

STM SatLink 2900 software version required: 14.2.0 or higher.

Connections and login

1. Connect the ACU and STM SatLink 2900 with the following cables:
 - Ethernet cable for TCP/IP data communication. Connect LAN A on the VSAT modem to LAN 1 on the ACU.
 - 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for RX and TX frequencies

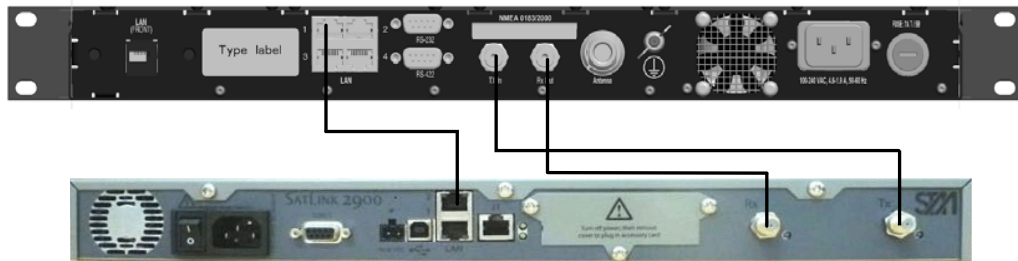


Figure D-21: Connecting STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem to the ACU

2. Connect a PC to the modem via serial (setting: 38400, 8, N, 1) or telnet.
3. Login to the modem with the user name and password received from the VSAT service provider.

Example: Login: root
 Password: *****
 SatLink 2900
 - Main board ID 120265, Revision R4.0
 - SW ID 120208, Revision 16.0.0 Build 46

4. Check that the modem has software version 14.2.0 or higher. Earlier modem software versions are not supported.

Modem configuration requirements

Type the following command in a modem console to set up the STM Satlink 2900 modem to use the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku:

Command	Description
<code>odu antctrl waitstablize 300</code>	This configures the antenna stability tries which is the amount of times the modem should try to log on before it tries the next beam in its transponder list.
<code>odu antctrl periodictime 5</code>	This configures the polling frequency in seconds between the modem and ACU.
<code>odu antctrl port 0 (zero)</code>	This configures the IP communication port to default (5990). Use the command <code>odu antenna</code> to configure the modem with either SAILOR 800 VSAT or SAILOR 900 VSAT
<code>odu antenna 30</code>	This configures the antenna type to a Thrane & Thrane / Cobham SATCOM antenna. NOTE: <code>odu antenna 52</code> is supported from modem software 16.0.0 or higher. Use the command <code>odu txttype</code> to set the BUC for either SAILOR 800 VSAT or SAILOR 900 VSAT.
<code>odu txttype 62</code>	This configures the BUC type to a SAILOR VSAT BUC NOTE: <code>odu txttype 63</code> is supported from modem software 16.0.0 or higher. Use the command <code>odu lnb</code> to set the LNB for either SAILOR 800 VSAT or SAILOR 900 VSAT.
<code>odu lnb 62</code>	This configures the LNB type to SAILOR VSAT LNB NOTE: <code>lnb 63</code> is supported from modem software 16.0.0. or higher.
<code>odu antctrl enable all</code>	This will enable the communication between the modem and ACU including GPS input.
<code>dvb rx autostart on</code>	This will enable modem rx.
<code>dvb tx autostart on</code>	This will enable modem tx. Save the new ODU Configuration:

Table D-9: Configuration of the STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem

Command	Description
save config	This will save the above settings to flash in the modem. And restart the modem:
restart	

Table D-9: Configuration of the STM SatLink 2900 VSAT modem (Continued)

Example:

```

odu antctrl show
Antenna Controller Configuration
-----
Type                : Thrane & Thrane SAILOR 900
Enabled             : All
IP address          : 10.110.2.226
Polling frequency  : 5 sec
Antenna Stability Tries : 300

Antenna Controller Status
-----
Controller detected : no
Packets sent       : 0
Packets received   : 0

```

D.7.2 ACU configuration

To set up the ACU to work with an STM Satlink 2900 VSAT modem, do as follows:

1. Add a modem profile with the STM Satlink 2900 modem. See *Modem profiles* on page 6-26.
2. Add a satellite profile using the STM Satlink modem profile just created. See *Satellite profiles* on page 6-29.
3. Edit the network settings and input the IP information supplied with the modem. See *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.
4. Activate the satellite profile.

D.7.3 Configuration example (STM Satlink 2900)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web interface are shown in the figures below.

MODEM PROFILES

ADD MODEM PROFILE

Profile name

Modem

10 MHz reference

Figure D-22: VSAT modem profile, STM SatLink 2900 (example)

SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name

Modem profile

Elevation cutoff °

TRACKING

Tracking type

RX frequency Modem User defined

Figure D-23: Satellite profile, STM SatLink 2900 (example)

D.8 Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem

D.8.1 Interfaces and VSAT modem configuration

The following sections describe how to connect an ACU to a Gilat SkyEdgeII VSAT modem. The Gilat SkyEdge II and the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku are fully integrated and require only little user setup.

Connections

Connect the ACU and Gilat SkyEdge II with the following cables:

- 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for RX and TX frequencies
- Serial cable for communication with the modem. Connect SERIAL on the VSAT modem to RS-232 on the ACU. You can use the cable described in *Modem Cable iDirect Serial and RSSI* on page C-3.

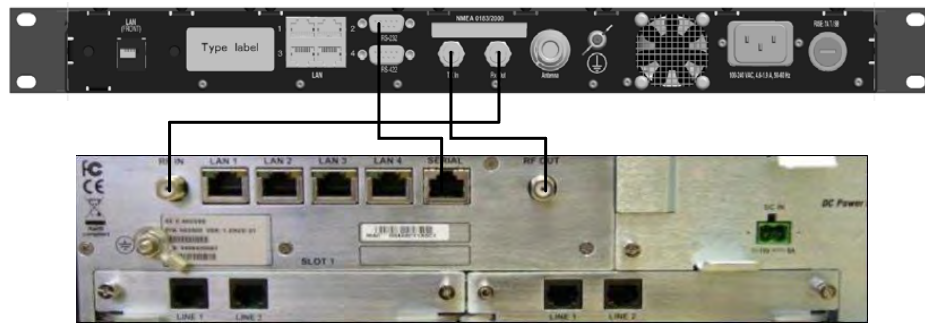


Figure D-24: Connecting Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem to the ACU

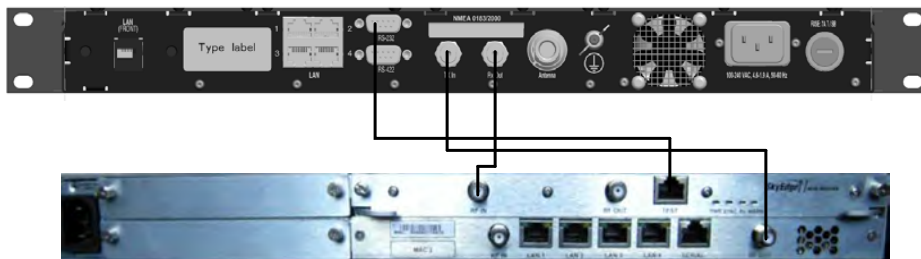


Figure D-25: Connecting Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem (rack) to the ACU

Modem configuration requirements

1. Connect a PC with an Ethernet cable to LAN port 1 of the VSAT modem.
2. Set the PC to static IP address: 192.168.1.2
3. Start an Internet browser (e.g. Internet Explorer) and go to URL://192.168.1.1 in order to get access to the web server of the VSAT modem.
4. Login with: User name: inst and Password: \$Sat2598\$
5. Go to the menu **Installer**.

Parameter	Settings
RF Downlink frequency	In the section General the RF Downlink frequency is shown. Write it down as it is going to be used for the selection of LNB LO. Further down on the page you find the BUC and LNB LO frequencies.
LNB LO	Depending on the RF Downlink frequency select an appropriate LNB LO of 9.75, 10.25, 10.75 or 11.25 GHz which will result in an L-band frequency between 950 and 1650 MHz which is the operating frequency band of the SkyEdge II Access modem.
BUC LO	Select the BUC to be 12.8 GHz as this is the BUC LO of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku. Remember to inform the hub operator about this when doing line up and commissioning.
BUC 10MHz Reference Signal	The BUC 10MHz Reference Signal must be configured to ON, otherwise the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku will never allow TX. Scroll further down to enable GPS for the Location Coordinates. This enables the serial protocol of the modem so it can communicate with the ACU.

Table D-10: Configuration of Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem

- Go to the top of the page and press the **Submit** button and **OK** to save the new settings.

The VSAT modem is now configured to be used with the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.

D.8.2 ACU configuration

To set-up the ACU to work with a Gilat SkyEdge II VSAT modem, do as follows:

- Add a modem profile with the Gilat SkyEdge II modem. See *Modem profiles* on page 6-26.
- Add a satellite profile using the Gilat SkyEdge II modem profile just created. See *Satellite profiles* on page 6-29.
- Edit the network settings and input the IP information supplied with the modem. See *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.
- Activate the satellite profile.

See also the configuration example in the following section.

D.8.3 Configuration example (Gilat SkyEdge II)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web MMI are shown in the figures below.

MODEM PROFILES

ADD MODEM PROFILE

Profile name:

Modem:

Baud rate:

10 MHz reference:

Figure D-26: VSAT modem profile, Gilat Sky Edge II (example)

SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name:

Modem profile:

Predefined satellites:

Satellite position: °

Polarisation skew: °

Maximum inclination: °

Elevation cutoff: °

RX polarisation: Horizontal Vertical

TX polarisation: Co-pol X-pol

LNB LO frequency: GHz

TX RF frequency: GHz

TRACKING

Tracking type:

RX frequency: Modem User defined

Figure D-27: Satellite profile, Gilat Sky Edge II (example)

D.9 Inmarsat G5 modem

D.9.1 Interfaces and VSAT modem configuration

Inmarsat G5 is delivered in a pre-wired and fully configured 19" rack by Inmarsat.

D.9.2 Connecting a Inmarsat G5 modem

Inmarsat G5 is delivered in a pre-wired and fully configured 19" rack by Inmarsat.

D.9.3 Inmarsat G5 Driver

The Inmarsat G5 driver uses two interfaces on the SAILOR ACU VSAT KU: RS-232 and LAN1.

RS-232

The RS-232 serial port outputs NMEA GPS strings that can be used by the Inmarsat G5 system to feed GPS to the VSAT modem. The baud rate is fixed at 4800 baud and the NMEA string is GPGGA and is output every 15th seconds.

Example of a GPGGA string:

```
$GPGGA,065401,5500.000,N,01200.000,E,1,08,,0.0,M,,,,*32
```

The RS-232 serial port also supports serial commands to configure and verify the LAN1 IP settings.

The following serial commands are supported:

[Set] and [Get] commands	
Set up of LAN1 IP address	\$SC:ACUNS:IP#203.88.69.106
Set IP Mask	\$SC:ACUNS:MASK#255.255.255.0
Set DNS	\$SC:ACUNS:DNS#4.2.2.2
Set Gateway	\$SC:ACUNS:GW#10.196.17.1
Get IP settings	\$GC:ACUNS

Table D-11: RS-232 [Set] and [Get] commands

ACU Response:

```
ACUNS:IP#203.88.69.103:MASK#255.255.255.0:GW#10.196.17.1:DNS#4.2.2.2
```

LAN1

The ACU LAN1 is used to communicate with the Inmarsat G5 system. This interface supports following commands:

[Get] commands		ACU Response
G5: Get Current ACU Status	\$CACUS	CACUS:ANTS#TRK:AGCL#68:TXL#1:HDG#YES:BLOK#NO
G5: Get Current ACU Values	\$CACUV	CACUV:AZIM#181.2:ELEV#26.8:RAZM#180.8:POLN#0.7
G5:Request Current Error Status	\$RCES	RCES:COMME#NOERROR:AZME#NOERROR:ELME#NOERROR:CLME#NOERROR:POLNME#NOERROR:GPSE#NOERROR:PWRE#NOERROR:BUCE#NOERROR:LNBE#NOERROR
G5:Request Current Values Status	\$RCVS	RXPOL#V:SKEW#0.0:MLOCK#ON:MAXINCL#0.0:TXFREQ#955000:TXLO#12800 RCVS:LALO#N55.00-E012.00:HEAD#1.7:SATP#11.0E:FREQ#1466900:BAND#1:LNB#XPOL:TXPOL#H:
G5: Get Command	\$GC:ACUNS	ACUNS:IP#192.168.1.1:MASK#255.255.255.0:GW#0.0.0.0:DNS#0.0.0.0

Table D-12: LAN1 - [Get] commands

[Set] commands	
G5: Set Command Modem Lock	\$SC:MLOCK#ON
G5: Set Command Modem No Lock	\$SC:MLOCK#OFF
G5: Send Values	\$SV:FREQ#1466900:SATP#42.0E:BAND#1:TXPOL#H:RXPOL#V:LNB#XPOL:TXFREQ#955000:TXLO#12800:SKEW#0.0:MAXINCL#0.0

Table D-13: LAN1 - [Set] commands

D.9.4 ACU configuration

To set-up the ACU to work with an Inmarsat G5 modem, do as follows:

1. Add a modem profile with the Inmarsat G5 modem. See *Modem profiles* on page 6-26.
2. Add a satellite profile using the Inmarsat G5 modem profile just created. See *Satellite profiles* on page 6-29.
3. Activate the satellite profile.

See also the configuration example in the following section.

D.9.5 Configuration example (Inmarsat G5)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web MMI are shown in the figures below.

MODEM PROFILES

ADD MODEM PROFILE

Profile name: Inmarsat G5

Modem: Inmarsat G5

10 MHz reference: External - VMU Tx

Port: 2000

Apply Cancel

Figure D-28: VSAT modem profile, Inmarsat G5 (example)

SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name: VSAT Global

Modem profile: Inmarsat G5

Elevation cutoff: 10.000 °

TRACKING

Tracking type: Narrow band

RX frequency: Modem User defined

Apply Cancel

Figure D-29: Satellite profile, Inmarsat G5 (example)

D.9.6 LAN setup requirements for G5 system

Make sure that the following requirements are taken care of when configuring the LAN:

- LAN1: Static IP
- LAN1: DHCP Server disabled
- DNS setup: Static IP
- GW setup: Static IP
- LAN3: IP <> LAN1
- LAN4: IP <> LAN1

See also *To configure the LAN network* on page 6-34.

D.10 Linkway S2 modem

D.10.1 Protocols and interfaces

The following sections describe the protocol and interface between the ACU and a LinkWay S2 modem.

Connections

Connect the ACU and Linkway S2 modem with the following cables:

- RS-232 console cable for control communication
- 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for rx and tx frequencies.

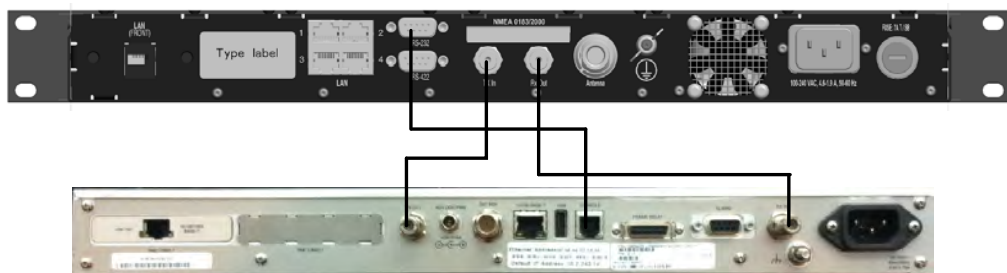


Figure D-30: Connecting LinkWay S2 modem to the ACU

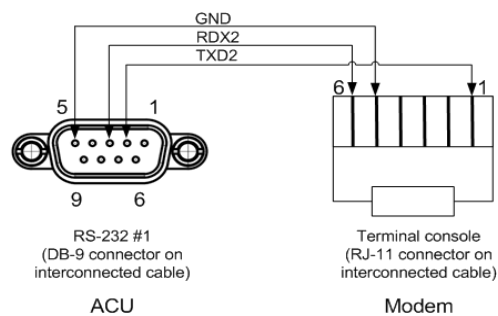


Figure D-31: Serial cable between the modem and the ACU

Modem signal

The \$TTD command is sent by the modem to the ACU every second. The format is as follows:

```
$TTD, Eb/No, RB_Detected, RB_Detected_With_No_CRC, Rx_Synced, Tx_Synced, RB_Power, 0*
```

Command items	Description
\$TTD	Literal string that prefixes the message
Eb/No	Eb/No measured since the last message transmission
RB_Detected	'L' if RBs were detected since the last message transmission or 'N'
RB_Detected_With_No_CRC	'D' if RBs were detected without CRC since the last message transmission or 'N'
Rx_Synced	'L' if terminal is Rx synced at the time of transmission of this message or 'N'
Tx_Synced	'T' if terminal is Tx synced at the time of transmission of this message or 'N'
RB_Power	Measured RB Power since the last message transmission
Checksum	

Table D-14: Linkway S2 modem command \$TTD

The ACU uses the Eb/No to show modem signal strength on the DASHBOARD of the web interface of the ACU. The Rx_Synced is used to determine if the modem is in Rx Lock with the satellite signal and is used to search for the satellite signal if Rx Lock is lost.

IP address

The \$TIPCD command is sent by the modem to the ACU once every 10th seconds. The format is as follows:

```
$TIPCD, MAC_ADDR_OF_TERMINAL,
IP_ADDR_OF_TERMINAL, IP_MASK_OF_TERMINAL, 0*
```

Command item	Description
\$TIPCD	Literal string that prefixes the message
MAC_ADDR_OF_TERMINAL	Ethernet address of the modem in aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff form.
IP_ADDR_OF_TERMINAL	IP address assigned to the modem at the time of message transmission in dotted decimal notation.
IP_MASK_OF_TERMINAL	IP subnet mask assigned to the modem at the time of message transmission, in dotted decimal notation.
Checksum	

Table D-15: LinkWay S2 modem command \$TIPCD

This \$TIPCD is not used by the ACU.

GPS

The \$GPGGA command is sent by the ACU to the modem once every 15th seconds. The format is as follows:

```
$GPGGA,055751,3732.1619,N,12659.0507,E,0,00,,,M,,M,,*5F
```

- UTC of Position 055751
- Latitude 3732.1619
- N or S
- Longitude 12659.0507
- E or W
- GPS quality indicator (0=invalid; 1=GPS fix; 2=Diff. GPS fix)
- Number of satellites in use [not those in view]
- Horizontal dilution of position
- Antenna altitude above/below mean sea level (geoid)
- Meters (Antenna height unit)
- Geoidal separation (Diff. between WGS-84 earth ellipsoid and mean sea level. - =geoid is below WGS-84 ellipsoid)
- Meters (Units of geoidal separation)
- Age in seconds since last update from diff. reference station
- Diff. reference station ID#
- Checksum

D.10.2 ACU configuration

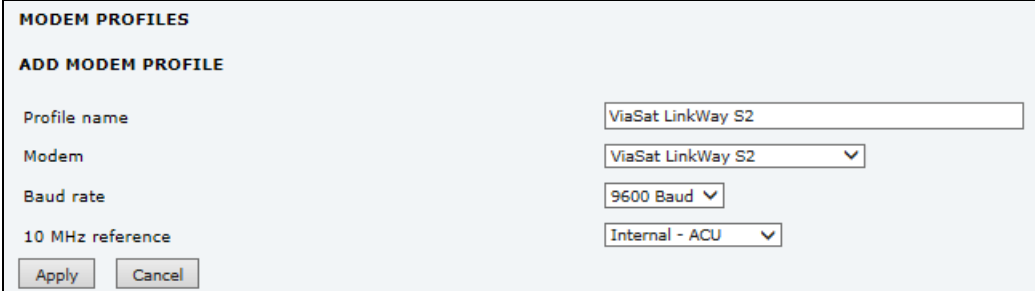
To set-up the ACU to work with an Linkway S2 modem, do as follows:

1. Add a modem profile with the Linkway S2 modem. See *Modem profiles* on page 6-26. Enter the information from you service provider.
2. Add a satellite profile using the Linkway S2 modem profile just created. See *Satellite profiles* on page 6-29.
3. Activate the satellite profile.

See also the configuration example in the following section.

D.10.3 Configuration example (Linkway S2)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web MMI are shown in the figures below



MODEM PROFILES

ADD MODEM PROFILE

Profile name: ViaSat LinkWay S2

Modem: ViaSat LinkWay S2

Baud rate: 9600 Baud

10 MHz reference: Internal - ACU

Apply Cancel

Figure D-32: Modem profile for Linkway S2

SATELLITE PROFILES

ADD SATELLITE PROFILE

Satellite profile name

Modem profile

Predefined satellites

Satellite position °

Polarisation skew °

Maximum inclination °

Elevation cutoff °

RX polarisation Horizontal Vertical

TX polarisation Co-pol X-pol

RX IF frequency MHz

LNB LO frequency GHz

RX RF frequency GHz

TX RF frequency x GHz

TRACKING

Tracking type

RX frequency Modem User defined

Figure D-33: Satellite profile with Linkway S2 modem profile

D.11 iDirect X7

D.11.1 Interfaces

The following sections describe the protocol and interface between the ACU and an iDirect X7 modem.

Connections

Connect the ACU and iDirect X7 modem with the following cables:

- Ethernet cable for TCP/IP data communication. Connect LAN 1 on the VSAT modem to LAN 1 on the ACU.
- 75 Ohm RF cables F-F connectors for rx and tx frequencies.

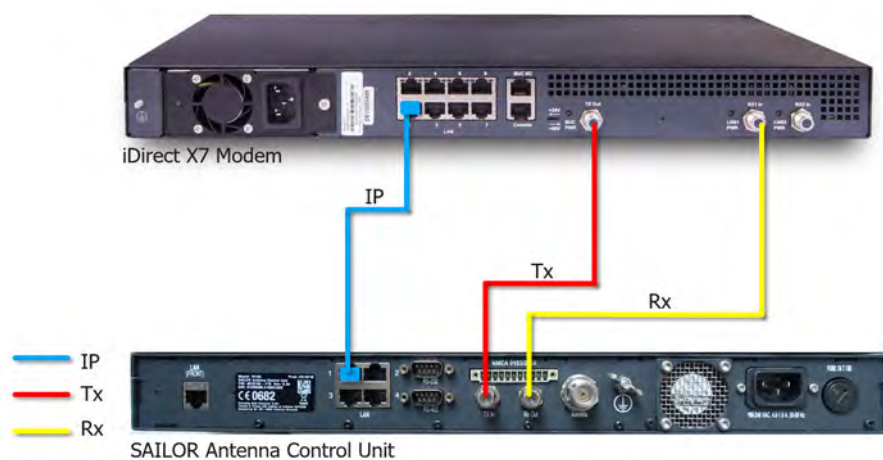


Figure D-34: Connecting iDirect X7 modem to the ACU

D.11.2 ACU configuration

To set-up the ACU to work with an iDirect X7 modem, do as follows:

1. Add a modem profile with the iDirect X7 modem. See *Modem profiles* on page 6-26. Enter the information from you service provider.
2. Add a satellite profile using the iDirect X7 modem profile just created. See *Satellite profiles* on page 6-29.
3. Activate the satellite profile.

See also the configuration example in the following section.

D.11.3 iDirect X7 modem software

Software 1.X7 pkg 1.6.1.3

This software is not compatible with SAILOR ACU.

Software 2.X7 pkg 1.5.1.2.

The ACU does not receive any pointing request from the modem. Below you can find the temporary solutions, A and B:

Solution A:

1. Log into X7 web interface and start the commissioning wizard.
2. When the procedure stops at step 5 (which is the bug in pkg 1.5.1.2), press **Exit** from the upper right corner of the modem's web interface. The antenna will receive a pointing request from the modem and will then start tracking, RX lock etc.
3. Even when the antenna is tracking and rx is locked, the tx power and P1dB value is still not set correctly. Run this procedure again once modem has rebooted.

Solution B:

1. Log into X7 ssh, modify the TX power and P1dB value. **The value must be told by NOC.** This will tell the modem that the commissioning procedure has already begun. The system will now start working normally.
If you use this solution, remember you can not run the commissioning wizard. If you do, the value of TX power and P1dB will be back to default again.

Tx power / P1dB: (tx_power_in_dbm= -xx.x, max_power_level_in_db = -xx.x)

Located in a folder: /sysopt/config/sat_router and the file is called falcon.opt

The CPI has already been performed at the factory.

Software X7 pkg 1.6.1.5.

Note | You cannot run line-up using the iDirect installation wizard.

At step 7-8 the iDirect X7 sends wrong TX frq. (Rf and not IF) to the SAILOR VSAT causing a: *0806C-0 ADM ERROR VMU frequency setup.*

Note | Before entering step 7 make sure that the SAILOR is in LINE UP State.

Software X7 pkg 1.6.1.7.

This is the latest iDirect software version for the modem iDirect X7 1.6.1.8.

D.11.4 Configuration example (iDirect X7)

Examples of modem profile and satellite configuration from the ACU web MMI are shown in the figures below

The screenshot shows the 'MODEM PROFILES' section with the 'EDIT MODEM PROFILE' form. The form includes the following fields and values:

- Profile name: X7 Modem
- Modem: iDirect Velocity (OpenAMIP)
- This profile is used on: 0 Satellite profiles
- 10 MHz reference: External - VMU Tx
- Port: 2000

Buttons for 'Apply' and 'Cancel' are visible at the bottom of the form.

Figure D-35: Modem profile for iDirect X7

You can specify which ever OpenAMIP port number you want in your options file. You just have to set it in the modem profile.

The screenshot shows the 'SATELLITE PROFILES' section with the 'EDIT SATELLITE PROFILE' form. The form includes the following fields and values:

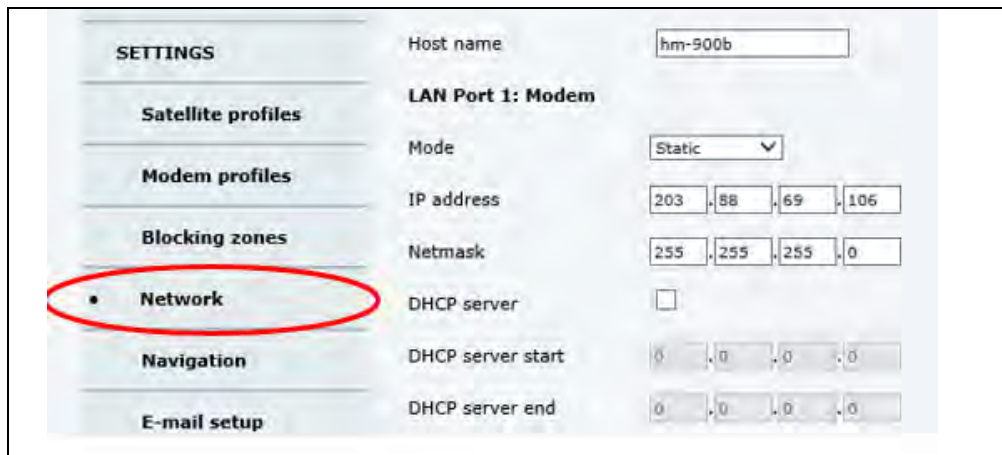
- Satellite profile name: C-Blue test
- Modem profile: X7 Modem
- Elevation cutoff: 10,000 °
- TRACKING section:
 - Tracking type: Narrow band
 - RX frequency: Modem User defined

Buttons for 'Apply' and 'Cancel' are visible at the bottom of the form.

Figure D-36: Satellite profile with iDirect X7 modem profile

Make sure to activate the new satellite profile.

Enter the IP address for LAN port 1 (from the options file).



SETTINGS	Host name	hm-900b
Satellite profiles	LAN Port 1: Modem	
Modem profiles	Mode	Static
Blocking zones	IP address	203 . 88 . 69 . 106
• Network	Netmask	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
Navigation	DHCP server	<input type="checkbox"/>
E-mail setup	DHCP server start	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
	DHCP server end	0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Figure D-37: Antenna IP address for LAN port 1 (from options file)

D.11.5 Dual Antenna Systems

Problem for software 1.62-0028 or earlier: The iDirect X7 modem reboots during start-up sequence.

This seems to be linked to the number of parameters being sent with the s-message in the openAMIP protocol, (s 1 1 0 0 0 X X) but only during the modems start-up sequence.

If you let it start up with 5 parameters (single system) and after that activate the dual function (7 parameters), then it is not rebooting. But booting up the modem as a dual system (with 7 parameters) always fail. If dual system is connected which has been manipulated to only send 5 parameters (all the rest is the same), then it does not reboot. This is an iDirect software bug.

Command line interface

E.1 Introduction

After you have done the initial configuration and connected the SAILOR VSAT system to your network, you can use Telnet to configure the SAILOR VSAT system. You can also set up VSAT modem parameters. Note that the following sections cover the command line interface for all SAILOR VSAT antennas.

Some of the commands may not be relevant for the antenna described in this manual.

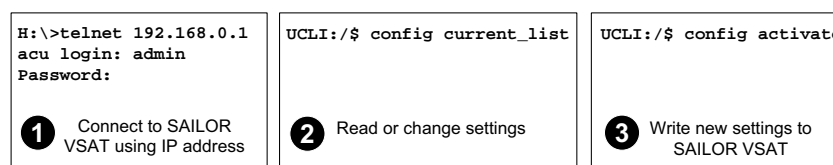


Figure E-1: How to use the command line interface (example for telnet)

After successful login you can read and change settings. Use the command **config activate** to activate the new settings in the ACU. You will need to refresh the browser window before the changed settings become visible.

Note Every change is performed on the active satellite profile or the active VSAT modem profile. Parameter identifiers are case sensitive.

E.1.1 Telnet connection

You can access the command line interface via Telnet.

Access to the SAILOR VSAT system system is protected by a user name and password. This is the same user name and password that is used in the web interface under **ADMINISTRATION**.

The interface is on the standard Telnet port 23 or SSH port 22. Use any LAN port and corresponding IP address of the ACU (except LAN 2 on GX/Ka ACU). To start telnet session do as follows:

1. Open a Telnet client of your choice.
2. At the prompt, enter the IP address of the ACU, login **admin** and password.

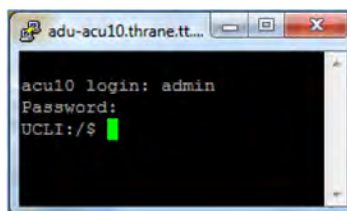


Figure E-2: Command line interface, login

E.1.2 Help

If you enter **help** directly at the prompt **UCLI: /\$** all available commands are listed. Additionally any command will take **help** as first argument and display detailed information of the specific command.

E.1.3 Conventions

The command description below uses the following special typography:

Convention	Description
Courier font	Information that is displayed on the screen.
Bold Courier font	Text the user must enter.
<argument>	Required argument
[argument]	Optional argument

Table E-1: Command typography

Example: `satellite lon [longitude]
zone <id> active <yes | no>`

E.2 Supported commands

The following commands are described in detail. They are listed in alphabetical order.

- *config*
- *demo*
- *dual_antenna*
- *exit*
- *help*
- *modem*
- *satellite*
- *status*
- *system*
- *track*
- *zone*

E.2.1 config

Command	Description
<code>config</code>	Shows the sub commands available, including a short description.
<code>config pending_list</code>	Shows the number of pending changes.
<code>config current_list</code>	Shows the values for the current satellite profile, antenna and some tracking information.
<code>config discard</code>	Discards all pending changes.
<code>config activate</code>	Use this command to save and activate the pending changes in the SAILOR VSAT system.

Table E-2: UCLI command: `config`

E.2.2 demo

Command	Description
<code>demo start</code>	Starts a demo pattern where the antenna will turn azimuth, elevation and cross elevation until it receives the command <code>demo stop</code> .
<code>demo stop</code>	Stops the antenna demo pattern.
<code>demo reset</code>	Resets the antenna to angle 0.

Table E-3: UCLI command: `demo`

E.2.3 dual_antenna

Command	Description
<code>dual_antenna mode</code>	Shows the current dual antenna mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • single • master • slave
<code>dual_antenna status</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shows the current dual-antenna mode status • active • inactive

Table E-4: UCLI command: `dual_antenna`

E.2.4 exit

Command	Description
<code>exit</code>	Exits the connection to the SAILOR VSAT system.

Table E-5: UCLI command: `exit`

E.2.5 help

Command	Description
<code>help</code>	Shows a list of commands available, including a short description.
<code>help satellite</code>	Shows the sub commands and description for the command <code>satellite</code> .
<code>help modem</code>	Shows the sub commands and a short description for the command <code>modem</code> .
<code>help track</code>	Shows the sub commands and description for the command <code>track</code> .
<code>help status</code>	Shows the sub commands and description for the command <code>status</code> .
<code>help system</code>	Shows the sub commands and a short description for the command <code>system</code> .
<code>help config</code>	Shows the sub commands, unit and description for the command <code>config</code> .
<code>help zone</code>	Shows the sub commands, unit and description for the command <code>zone</code> .
<code>help demo</code>	Shows the sub commands, unit and description for the command <code>demo</code> .
<code>help dual antenna</code>	Shows the sub commands, unit and description for the command <code>dual antenna</code> .
<code>help exit</code>	Shows the sub commands, unit and description for the command <code>exit</code> .

Table E-6: UCLI command: `help`

E.2.6 modem

Command	Description
<code>modem</code>	Shows a list of sub commands available, including a short description.
<code>modem name</code>	Shows the VSAT modem name of the currently active satellite profile (entered in the web interface).
<code>modem model</code>	Shows the currently active VSAT modem model (selected in the web interface).
<code>modem gps_fix</code>	Shows the current GPS position
<code>modem gps_lat</code>	Shows the latitude value of the current position.
<code>modem gps_lon</code>	Shows the longitude value of the current position.

Table E-7: UCLI command: `modem`

E.2.7 satellite

Command	Description
<code>satellite name</code>	Shows the name of the currently active satellite profile.
<code>satellite lon</code> <code>satellite lon 1W</code>	Shows or sets the longitude position of the satellite, in degrees. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.0W or 1.0E or -1.0 for west and 1.0 for east
<code>satellite skew</code> <code>satellite skew 3.7</code>	Shows or sets an additional skew offset of the satellite ^a . Some satellites have additional skew because they have been placed different in the orbit. E.g. Optus satellites in Australia are offset -45 degrees. Most satellites have 0 degree skew offset. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Skew of the satellite: -90° to +90°.
<code>satellite max_inc</code> <code>satellite max_inc 2.5</code>	Shows or sets the maximum inclination of the used satellite. Some satellites are old and are therefore moving in larger circles in space. Setting the maximum inclination will add this to the SAILOR VSAT system acquisition window size used to find the satellite. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maximum inclination of satellite 0.0° to 90°

Table E-8: UCLI command: `satellite`

Command	Description
<pre>satellite rx_pol satellite rx_pol v</pre>	<p>Shows or sets the current RX polarization:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • v (vertical) • h (horizontal) • l (left) • r (right)
<pre>satellite tx_pol satellite tx_pol v</pre>	<p>Shows or sets the current TX polarization:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • v (vertical) • h (horizontal) • l (left) • r (right)
<pre>satellite ele_cut_off satellite ele_cut_off 5</pre>	<p>Shows or sets the elevation referenced to earth where the SAILOR VSAT system must shut off for transmission. This is an FCC requirement. The elevation cut off depends on how much power is transmitted and which coding is used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid range: 0° to 90°
<pre>satellite rx_lo</pre>	<p>Shows the Rx LO / LNB LO. Range: 9.6 GHz to 11.3 GHz. GX: 18.25 GHz</p>
<pre>satellite rx_rf_freq satellite rx_rf_freq 12.123456 9.75</pre>	<p>Shows or sets the Rx frequency and LNB Lo frequency.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ku band: RF frequency: 10.7 – 12.75 GHz. LNB Lo frequency: 9.6 GHz – 11.3 GHz. The SAILOR VSAT system supports any LNB Lo. • Ka band: RF frequency: 19.2 – 20.2 GHz. LNB Lo frequency: 18.25 GHz. <p>Note: Setting the Ku-band Rx frequency and LNB Lo automatically configures the L-band rx frequency: Rx L-band freq = rx_rf_freq – LNB Lo</p> <p>Example: 1567.890 MHz = 11.567890 GHz – 10 GHz</p>

Table E-8: UCLI command: `satellite` (Continued)

Command	Description
<pre>satellite rx_if_freq satellite rx_if_freq 1200.123 9.75</pre>	<p>Shows or sets the IF Rx frequency together with the LNB Lo frequency.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ku band: IF frequency within 950 MHz – 2150 MHz. LNB Lo frequency within 9.6 GHz – 11.3 GHz. The SAILOR VSAT system supports any LNB Lo. • Ka band: IF frequency within 950 MHz – 1950 MHz. LNB Lo frequency: 18.25 GHz. <p>Note: Setting the L-band Rx frequency and LNB Lo automatically configures the Ku-band Rx frequency: Rx Ku-band frequency = LNB Lo + rx_if_frequency</p> <p>Example: 11.567890 GHz = 10 GHz + 1567.890000 MHz</p>
<pre>satellite tx_lo</pre>	<p>Shows the current TX LO frequency, fixed at Ku band:12.8 GHz Ka band: 28.05 GHz</p>
<pre>satellite tx_rf_freq satellite tx_rf_freq 14.123456</pre>	<p>Shows or sets the RF frequency used for tx.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid range: Ku band: 13.75 GHz to 14.5 GHz. Ka band: 29 GHz to 30 GHz. <p>Note: Configuring the Ku-band tx frequency automatically configures the L-band frequency: L-band frequency = Ku-band tx frequency – 12.8 GHz (BUC Lo)</p> <p>Example: 1308.300000 MHz = 14.108300 GHz – 12.8 GHz</p>
<pre>satellite tx_if_freq satellite tx_if_freq 1200.123</pre>	<p>Shows or sets the IF frequency for tx.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid range: Ku band: 950 MHz to 1700 MHz. Ka band: 950 MHz to 1950 MHz <p>Note: Configuring the L-band tx frequency automatically configures the Ku-band frequency: Ku-band frequency = 12.8 GHz (BUC Lo) + L-band frequency</p> <p>Example: 14.108300 GHz = 12.8 GHz + 1308.300000 MHz</p>

Table E-8: UCLI command: `satellite` (Continued)

a. Relevant for Ku band.

E.2.8 status

Command	Description
status	Shows the sub commands available, including a short description.
status system	Shows the current status of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.
status track_all	Shows the current values for all tracking parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • vessel heading • azimuth relative • elevation relative • polarization skew • GPS latitude and longitude
status event_list	Shows a list of active events.

Table E-9: UCLI command: **status**

E.2.9 system

Command	Description
system	Shows the sub commands available, including a short description.
system restart	Sends a command to the ACU to restart the system instantaneously. It makes a power-on self test and then points to the last used satellite.
system info	Shows the software version, part names and serial numbers of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku.
system oem <OEM ID>	Set system OEM ID. 0: Cobham 1: Inmarsat 2: Furuno
bpo [on off]	Set Bearing performance optimization On or Off.

Table E-10: UCLI command: **system**

E.2.10 track

Command	Description
<code>track</code>	Shows the sub commands available, including a short description.
<code>track mode</code> <code>track mode dvb</code>	Shows or sets the receiver bandwidth or mode, the way the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku tracks the satellite: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • narrow (recommended, uses the built-in 300 kHz filter of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku) • rssi (uses the RSSI signal from the VSAT modem) • wide (uses the wide-band filter to track the satellite) • dvb (uses the built-in DVB-S2 receiver of the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku to track the satellite. You must configure <code>dvb_sym</code> and <code>dvb_nid</code>.) • GSC (uses Inmarsat Global Signalling Channel) • GSCpwr (uses power of Inmarsat Global Signalling Channel)
<code>track dvb_sym</code> <code>track dvb_sym 22</code>	Shows or sets the current mega symbols rate for the DVB-S2 receiver when in dvb mode. The symbol rate used to verify and track a transponder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid range: 0.1 — 99
<code>track dvb_nid</code> <code>track dvb_nid 0</code>	Shows or sets the DVB NID to be verified by the built-in DVB-S2 tracking receiver, when using tracking mode DVB. It configures the NID used to verify and track a transponder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid range: 0 — 65535 A NID of '0' disables the NID check. Then the NID will be omitted in the verification of the transponder.
<code>track rx_rf_freq</code>	The frequency for the receiver to tune to. Verify that the frequency is in the same range as the modem <code>rx_rf_frequency</code> , above or below 11.7 GHz. If <code>rx_rf_freq</code> is set to 0, the tracking frequency is the same as the RX frequency provided by the modem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid range: Ku band: 10.7 GHz to 12.75 GHz Ka band: 19.2 GHz to 20.2 GHz

Table E-11: UCLI command: `track`

E.2.11 zone

Command	Description
<code>zone</code>	Shows the sub commands, unit and description for the command <code>zone</code> .
<code>zone <id> azimuth <start angle> <end angle></code>	Sets the azimuth angles of the blocking zone for one zone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Valid zones: 0 to 7 Valid angles: 0 to 360
<code>zone <id> elevation <start angle> <end angle></code>	Sets the elevation angles for a blocking zone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Valid zones: 0 to 7 Valid angles: 0 to 360
<code>zone <id> tx_off <yes no></code>	Enables or disables TX inside the blocking zone.
<code>zone <id> active <yes no></code>	Enables or disables the blocking zone.
<code>zone <id></code>	Shows the setting for the blocking zone.

Table E-12: UCLI command: zone

SAILOR VSAT – cURL commands

F.1 Introduction

This appendix describes some useful cURL commands supported by the SAILOR VSAT antenna systems. curl is a command-line utility for transferring data from or to a server designed to work without user interaction. With curl, you can download or upload data using one of the supported protocols including HTTP, HTTPS, SCP, SFTP, and FTP.

The following commands are valid from software version 1.62 build 27.

F.2 Supported commands

F.2.1 To get started

To get started do as follows:

1. Replace [YourAdminPassword] with the correct admin password stored in the ACU.
2. Replace [acu_ip] with the correct IP address or host name of the ACU.
3. Downloaded files/cookies that are saved in the same location as the cURL binary.
4. Enter one of the commands below.

F.2.2 Use cases

LOGIN to ACU and save cookie for later use:

```
curl -d "user_login=admin&pass_login=[YourAdminPassword]" --cookie-jar ./acucookie  
http://[acu_ip]/c?pageId=login
```

DIAGNOSTICS full report DOWNLOAD:

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie  
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=diag"
```

POST-LOG only DOWNLOAD:

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "post="  
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=api"
```

Active Events only DOWNLOAD:

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "active_events="  
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=api"
```

Events only DOWNLOAD:

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "events="
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=api"
```

F.2.3 Statistic download**Last 10 minutes**

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "action=stat_day" -d
"period=10" "http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=api"
```

Last hour

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "action=stat_day" -d
"period=60" "http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=api"
```

Last 20 hours

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "action=stat_day" -d
"period=1200" "http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=api"
```

Day report

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "dl_interval=24"
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=stat"
```

Week report

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "dl_interval=168"
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=stat"
```

Month report

```
curl -O -J --cookie ./acucookie -d "dl_interval=720"
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageID=download&type=stat"
```

F.2.4 Upload software**Upload SW tiif image**

The software file (1.tiif) must be in the same folder as the cURL binary.

```
curl --cookie ./acucookie --http1.0 --header "Content-Type:
multipart/form-data" -F "file=@1.tiif"
"http://[acu_ip]/c?pageId=upload&ftype=tiif"
```


DVB-S satellites

This appendix contains examples of DVB-S satellite data for azimuth calibration.






VSAT coverage	Satellite name	Satellite position	RX polarization	RX frequency	Symbol rate	NID
Americas 	EchoStar9/ Galaxy23	121°W	Vertical	12.016 GHz	20.000 MS/s	0
Europe & Americas	Hispasat	30°W	Vertical	12.052 GHz	27.500 MS/s	51
East Asia 	NSS6 Transponder (South East) Backup (North East)	95°E	Horizontal	11.635 GHz	27.500 MS/s	8192
Europe & ME 	SES 4	22°W	Horizontal	12.673 GHz	20.25 MS/s	65535
Europe 	THOR 6 BEAM K2	0.8°W	Horizontal	11.747 GHz	28.000 MS/s	4369
Europe 	THOR 5 BEAM T2 Backup	0.8°W	Vertical	12.418 GHz	28.000 MS/s	70

Table G-1: Examples of DVB-S satellites for azimuth calibration

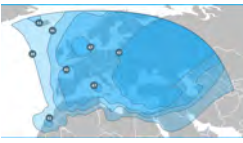
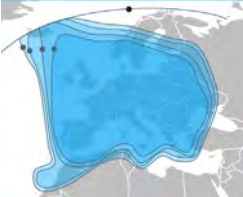




VSAT coverage	Satellite name	Satellite position	RX polarization	RX frequency	Symbol rate	NID
Europe 	Astra 4A	4.8°E	Horizontal	12.637 GHz	14.468 MS/s	86
Europe 	Astra 1N	19.2°E	Horizontal	12.032 GHz	27.500 MS/s	133
China 	Apstar6 Transponder Backup	134°E	Vertical Vertical	12.435 GHz 12.675 GHz	27.500 MS/s 27.500 MS/s	65 65
Australia 	Optus D1	160°E -45°skew	Horizontal	12.391 GHz	14.294 MS/s	0
Australia 	Optus D1	160°E -45°skew	Horizontal	12.407 GHz	12.294 MS/s	0
Australia 	Optus D2	152°E -45°skew	Vertical	12.546 GHz	22.500 MS/s	0
Singapore	Thaicom 5 Transponder	78.5°E	Horizontal Vertical	12.272 GHz 12.313 GHz	30.000 MS/s 30.000 MS/s	88 1

Table G-1: Examples of DVB-S satellites for azimuth calibration (Continued)


VSAT coverage	Satellite name	Satellite position	RX polarization	RX frequency	Symbol rate	NID
China, Japan, Korea, Burma	Apstar 2R (Telstar 10) / Apstar 7	76.5°E	Vertical	11.167 GHz	45.000 MS/s	0
Osaka, Japan, Philippines, Korea 	KT 5	113°E	Vertical	12.430 GHz	25.6 Ms/s	57

Table G-1: Examples of DVB-S satellites for azimuth calibration (Continued)

For satellite data of other regions or transponders see www.lyngsat.com.

Example:

Freq. Tp	Provider Name	Channel Name	System Encryption	SR-FEC SID-VPID	ONID-TID APID Lang.	Beam EIRP (dBW) C/N lock	Source Updated	
11038 V tp 38	CANAL+	Canal +	P	DVB-S Mediaguard 2 Nagravision 3	22000-5/6	1-1038	Europe 51 6.5	D Shimoni 111119

Figure G-1: Satellite data, example from www.lyngsat.com

The above transponder has following parameters:

- Frequency: 11.038 GHz
- Polarization: V-Vertical
- Symbol Rate: 22.000 MS/s
- NID: 1
- Coverage: Europe.

Grounding and RF protection

H.1 Why is grounding required?

H.1.1 Reasons for grounding

Grounding the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system is required for at least two reasons:

- Safety: Lightning protection of persons and equipment.
- Protection: ESD (ElectroStatic Discharge) protection of equipment.

H.1.2 Safety

First of all grounding of the system is required for safety reasons. In the event of a lightning strike at the ADU a proper grounding of the system will provide a low resistance path to divert the strike discharge to seawater.

H.1.3 ESD Protection

The ESD protection circuits in the ACU rely on proper grounding of the system in order to work properly. Otherwise sensitive circuits within the ACU might be damaged due to ESD when you are handling the equipment.

H.2 Grounding Recommendations

H.2.1 To ground the ACU

The ACU should be grounded to the ship/hull. For this purpose you may use a short ADU cable and a grounding kit. Further, the ACU must be grounded at its grounding stud in order to ensure proper grounding if the short ADU cable is disconnected. For further information, see *To ground the ACU* on page 3-24.

If you use the Extended cable support, make the ground connections through the cable support. You may need to extend the ground plane using copper foil, see the following section.

To extend the ground plane

In some cases it may not be possible to access the hull and at the same time place the ACU in a suitable place. A way to insure good grounding and at the same time make it possible to ground the coax cable - is to extend the ship ground plane by means of copper foil. The maximum length of the foil is determined by the width of the foil:

Copper foil 5 cm wide: Max 50 cm

Copper foil 10 cm wide: Max 100 cm

Copper foil 20 cm wide: Max 200 cm

Note | The foil must be at least 0.1 mm thick.

Connect the foil to the hull by plenty of screws or hard-soldering. Run the foil past the place where the short ADU cable is to be grounded and mount a grounding kit on top of the foil. For details on the jumper cable see *Jumper cable for grounding* on page H-11.

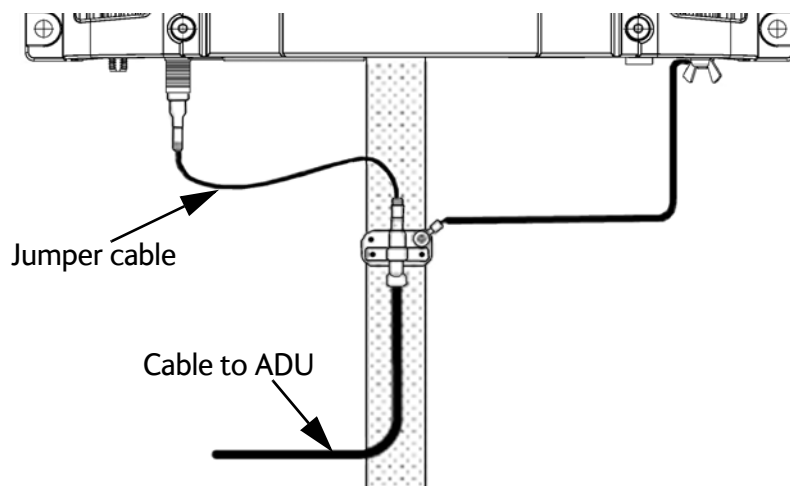


Figure H-1: Extending the ground plane

H.2.2 To ground the ADU

You can ground the ADU to the ship/hull via one or more of its mounting bolts. Make sure to remove painting, dirt, grease etc. at the mounting holes in order to make good electrical

contact to the hull. Use serrated washers when securing the mounting bolts and seal the joint with protective coating to avoid corrosion.

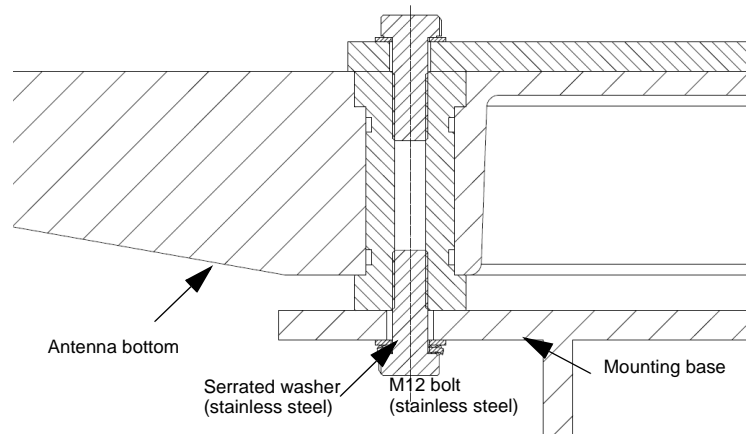


Figure H-2: Grounding the ADU

Note For optimum grounding use the mounting bolt located closest to the ADU cable plate, see *To ground the ADU* on page 3-21.

It is always recommended to establish the shortest possible grounding path e.g. on steel hulls the ADU should be grounded directly to the hull². However, due to the fact that this is not possible on e.g. fiberglass hulls (nor is it preferable on aluminium hulls) a number of alternative grounding methods are suggested in the following paragraphs.

2. Please note that the ADU ground connection is made at the same electrical ground potential as the ACU.

H.3 Alternative grounding for steel hulls

The following guidelines assume a two-wire, isolated grounding arrangement; that is no part of the circuit, in particular the battery negative, is connected to any ground potential or equipment.

H.3.1 To ground the ACU

The ACU should preferably be grounded to the ship with the short cable. Further, the ACU must be grounded at its grounding stud in order to ensure a proper grounding if the short ADU cable is disconnected.

The ground connection can be established either at the hull (recommended) or at a dedicated RF ground if available (alternative).

Important

However, bear in mind that the ADU ground connection is to be made at the **same electrical ground potential as the ACU** (see *To ground the ADU*).

The ACU provides galvanic isolation (as required) from its input power terminals to the chassis/grounding stud. This way the isolated grounding arrangement is maintained.

H.3.2 To ground the ADU

Note

For optimum grounding use the mounting bolt located closest to the ADU cable plate, see *To ground the ADU* on page 3-21.

Terminal grounded at the hull (recommended)

In this case the ADU is grounded to the ship via one (or more) of its mounting bolts. Make sure to remove painting, dirt, grease etc. at the mounting holes in order to make good electrical contact to the hull. Use serrated washers when securing the mounting bolts and seal the joint with protective coating to avoid corrosion.

Terminal grounded at a dedicated RF ground (alternative)

In this case the ADU is grounded with a separate ground cable. The ground cable must be routed parallel and close to the shielded coax cable connecting the ADU to the ACU grounding kit. A heavy gauge wire with tinned strands (min. 6 mm²) can be used for this purpose.

Note

The ADU must be electrically isolated at its mounting bolts by means of shoulder bushings and washers ensuring the isolated RF ground - see *Isolation of the ADU from the mounting base* on page H-9.

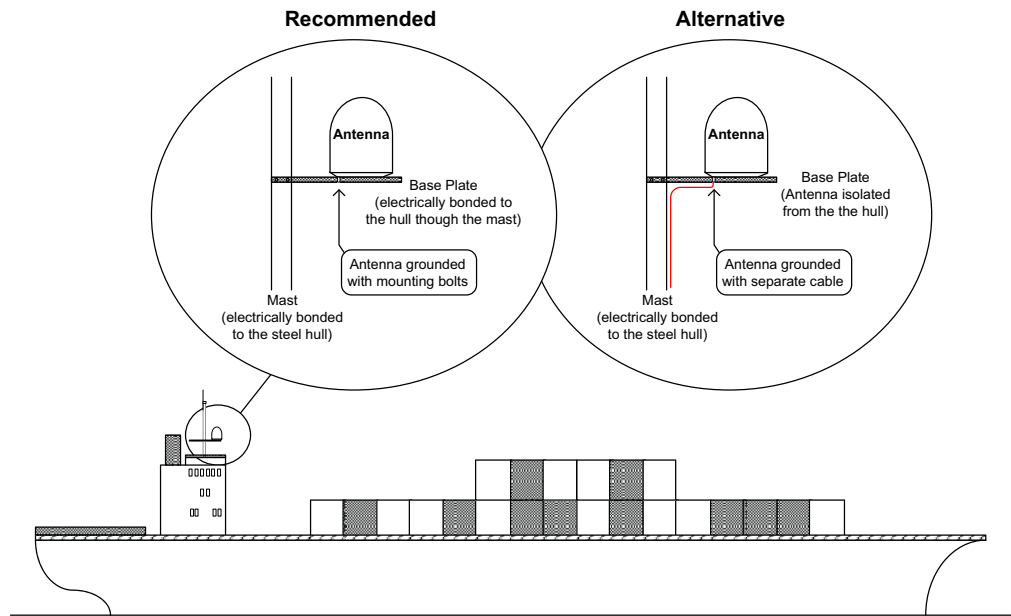


Figure H-3: Grounding at a dedicated RF ground (alternative)

H.4 Alternative grounding for aluminum hulls

The following guidelines assume a two-wire, isolated grounding arrangement; that is no part of the circuit, in particular the battery negative, is connected to any ground potential or equipment.

H.4.1 To ground the ACU

The ACU should preferably be grounded with the short cable. Further, the ACU must be grounded at its grounding stud to ensure a proper grounding if the short ADU cable is disconnected.

The ground connection must be established at a dedicated RF ground (either capacitively or electrically coupled).

Important Remember to make the ADU ground connection at the **same electrical ground potential** as the ACU (see *To ground the ADU*).

The ACU provides galvanic isolation (as required) from its input power terminals to the chassis/grounding stud. This way the isolated grounding arrangement is maintained.

H.4.2 To ground the ADU

If the mounting base of the ADU is electrically connected to the hull (or any other ground potential than the ACU), the ADU must be isolated at its mounting bolts by means of shoulder bushings and washers, see H.6.3. This is done in order to prevent DC currents flowing in the hull thus causing electrolytic corrosion.

However, a ground connection must be established via one of the mounting bolts using a separate ground cable. The ground cable must be routed parallel and in close proximity to the shielded coax cable hence connecting the ADU to the ACU Grounding kit. A heavy gauge wire with tinned strands (min. 6 mm²) can be used for this purpose.

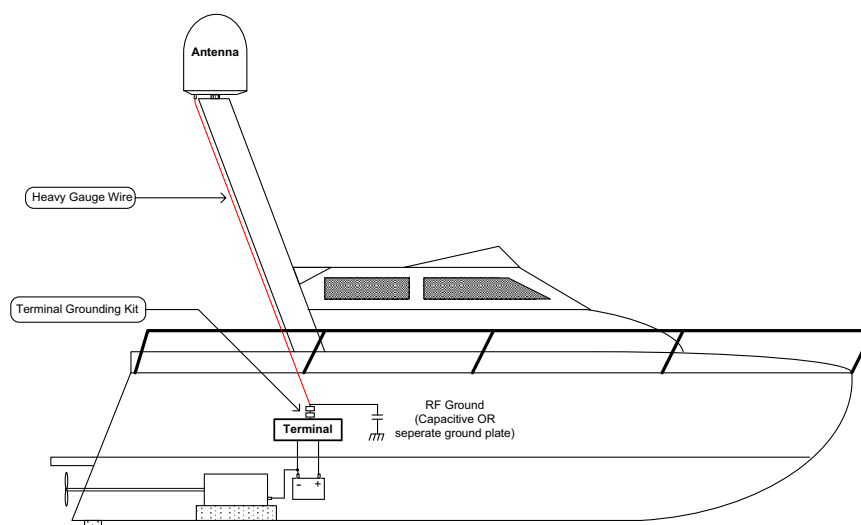


Figure H-4: Alternative grounding for aluminium hulls

H.5 Alternative grounding for fibre glass hulls

H.5.1 To ground the ACU

The ACU should preferably be grounded with the short ADU cable and a grounding kit (available from Cobham SATCOM). Further, the ACU must be grounded at its grounding stud in order to ensure a proper grounding if the short ADU cable is disconnected.

The ground connection must be established at a dedicated RF ground (either capacitive or electrical coupled).

Important

Bear in mind that the ADU ground connection is to be made at the **same electrical ground potential** as the ACU (see *To ground the ADU*).

H.5.2 To ground the ADU

If the mounting base of the ADU is electrically connected to any other ground potential than the ACU (e.g. Lightning Ground), the ADU must be isolated at its mounting bolts by means of shoulder bushings and washers - see section H.6.3.

However, a ground connection must be established via one of the mounting bolts using a separate ground cable. The ground cable must be routed parallel and in close proximity to the shielded coax cable hence connecting the ADU to the ACU Grounding kit. A heavy gauge wire with tinned strands (min. 6 mm²) can be used for this purpose.

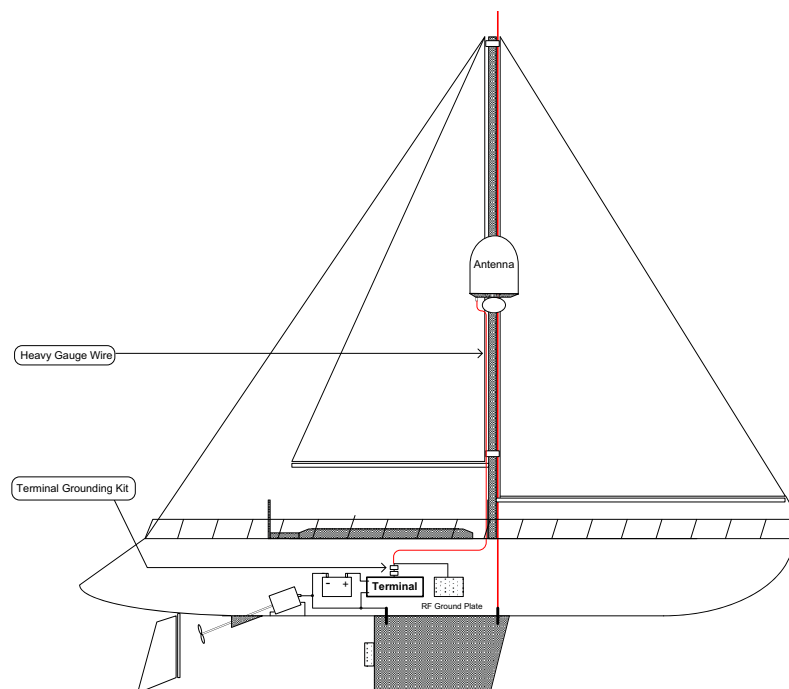


Figure H-5: Alternative grounding for fiberglass hulls

H.6 Separate ground cable

H.6.1 Ground cable - construction

When dealing with electrical installations in a marine environment, all wiring must be done with double insulated, tinned strands, high quality and if exposed also UV resistant cables. This shall also apply to the separate ground cable mentioned in the previous paragraphs.

The ground cable is constructed using an appropriate cable with a cross section area of at least 6 mm² (AWG10) and terminated with insulated ring crimp terminals – see illustration below. The crimp terminals must be a marine approved type e.g. the DuraSeal series from Raychem.

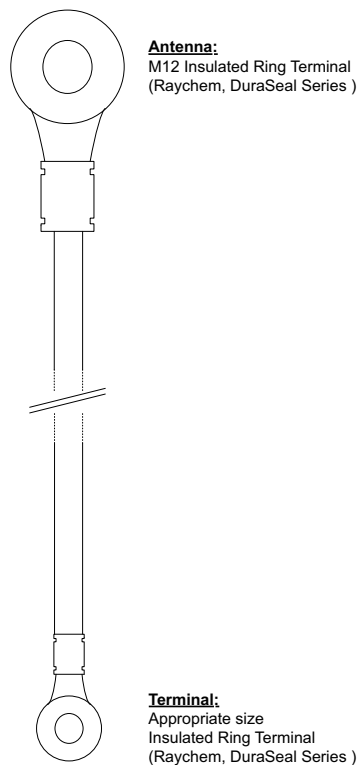


Figure H-6: Separate ground cable

H.6.2 Ground cable - connection

Mount the ground cable close to and parallel to the shielded coax cable thus minimizing ground loop problems. If possible, route the coax cable and the ground cable in metal conduits bonded to the hull or within a mast (depending on the actual installation).

The ground cable must be connected at one of the mounting/grounding bolts on the ADU. Use bolts and washers of stainless steel and seal the joint with protective coating to avoid corrosion. If the ADU is to be isolated from the mounting base, shoulder bushings and washers must be used — see figure H-7, *Isolation of the ADU from the mounting base* on page H-9.

At the other end, connect the ground cable as described in *To ground the ACU* on page H-2.

H.6.3 Isolation of the ADU from the mounting base

In cases where the ADU is to be isolated from the mounting base, shoulder bushings and washers (accessories) must be used as illustrated below. Please note that the isolation has to be implemented on all four mounting bolts (including the bolt securing the ground cable).

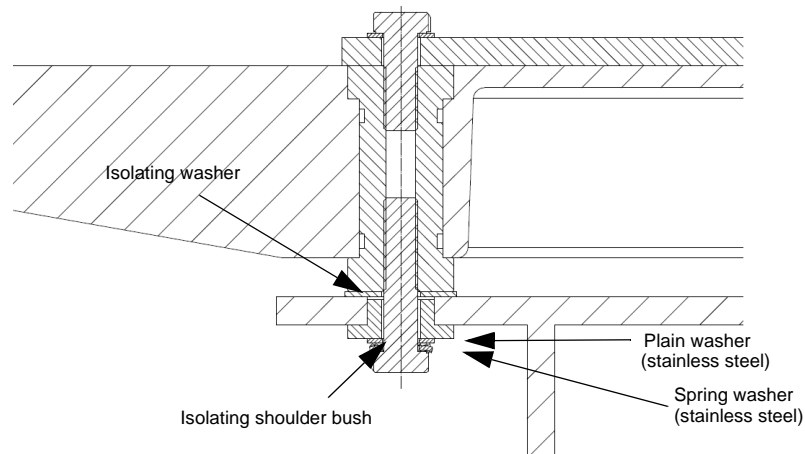


Figure H-7: Isolation of the ADU from the mounting base

The ground cable must be connected at one of the mounting/grounding bolts on the ADU as illustrated below. Remember to seal the joint with protective coating to avoid corrosion.

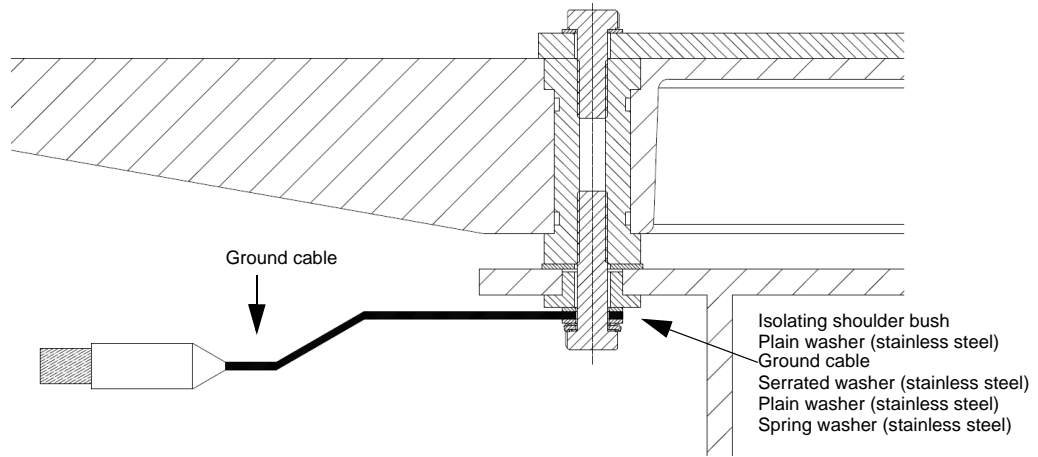
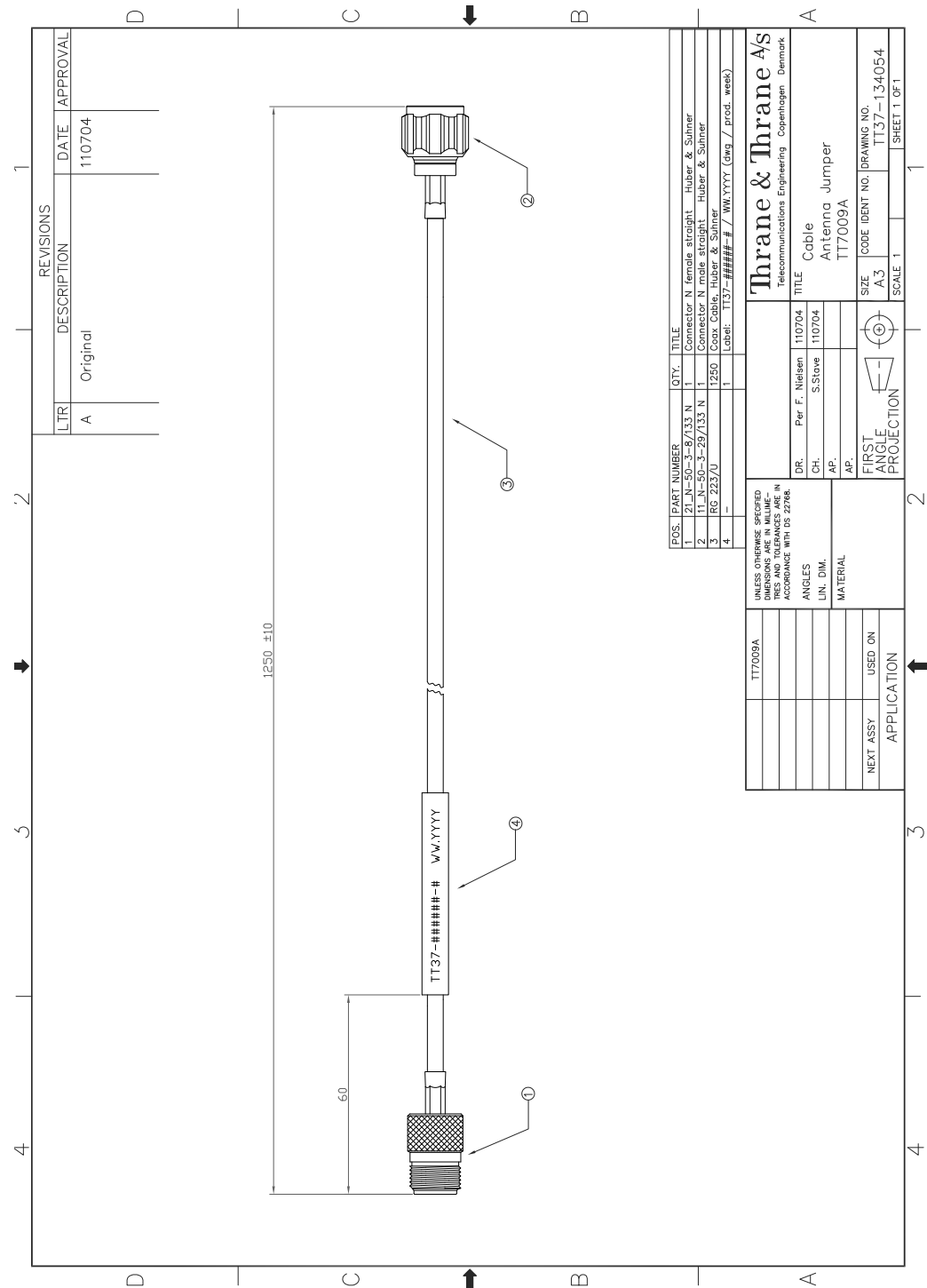


Figure H-8: ADU isolation and grounding cable

H.7 Jumper cable for grounding



REVISIONS		
LTR	DESCRIPTION	DATE
A	Original	110704

POS.	PART NUMBER	QTY.	TITLE
1	21.N-50-3-8/133 N	1	Connector N female straight. Huber & Suhner
2	11.N-50-3-29/133 N	1	Connector N male straight. Huber & Suhner
3	RG 223/U	1250	Coax Cable, Huber & Suhner
4	-	1	Label: TT37-####-# / WW.YYYY (dwg. / prod. week)

UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS AND TOLERANCES ARE IN ACCORDANCE WITH DS 22788.	
ANGLES	
LIN. DIM.	
MATERIAL	
DR.	Per F. Nielsen
CH.	S.Stave
AP.	
NEXT ASSY USED ON APPLICATION	

Thrane & Thrane A/S Telecommunications Engineering Copenhagen Denmark	
TITLE	Cable
	Antenna Jumper
	TT7009A
SIZE	A3
CODE IDENT NO.	1137-134054
SCALE	1
	SHEET 1 OF 1

Figure H-9: Jumper cable for grounding (specifications)

H.8 RF interference

Interference induced from nearby high-power RF transmitters might cause system failures and in extreme cases permanent damage to the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku equipment. If there are problems with interference from HF transmitters, it is advisable to mount ferrite clamps on the coax cable in order to provide suppression of induced RF. The ferrites will have no effect on the differential-mode signals but increases the impedance in relation to common-mode RFI.

H.8.1 Recommendations

Use 1-5 pcs. hinged clamp cores (e.g. the RFC or SFC series from Kitagawa) mounted on the ADU cable near the ADU.

System messages

I.1 Event messages – overview

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku detects events during

- POST (Power On Self Test) – a self test performed at every power-up.
- PAST (Person Activated Self test) – started in the web interface
- CM (Continuous Monitoring) – automatically performed while the system is in operation.

When the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku detects an event that requires your action, it issues an event message and the red Fail/Pass LED in the LED panel of the ACU is lit. As long as an event is active, it is shown in the ACU display and the web interface (in HELPDESK > Event list or click the event icon on the DASHBOARD).

Note

Active events and notifications are shown. As soon as the event is cleared, it is not displayed any longer. It is then moved to the Notifications section. Notifications are cleared after 24 hours.

State the Event ID when contacting your service partner.

The event description might contain a number of digits in brackets, e.g. (00000005). This is supplemental information and used for service and diagnostics purposes.

Some of the messages may not be relevant for the antenna described in this manual.

I.2 List of ADU events

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0A001-0	Antenna	ERROR	Production data	Production data is invalid.
0A002-0	Antenna	ERROR	XIM internal	Antenna configuration data stored in the PCM module is invalid.
0A003-0	Antenna	ERROR	XIM external	Antenna configuration data stored in the VIM module is invalid.
0A004-0	Antenna	ERROR	XIM I/X match	Antenna configuration data stored in the PCM module does not match the configuration data stored in the VIM module.
0A005-0	Antenna	ERROR	Antenna type	The configured antenna type is not supported or unknown.
0A006-0	Antenna	ERROR	PCM FPGA load	The PCM FPGA cannot be initialized and loaded correctly.
0A007-0	Antenna	ERROR	XIM FPGA load	The VIM FPGA cannot be initialized and loaded correctly.
0A008-0	Antenna	ERROR	XIM production	Production/calibration data stored in the VIM module is invalid.
0A00A-0	Antenna	ERROR	GNSS initialization	The GNSS device cannot be initialized. Check cable and GNSS device.
0A014-0	Antenna	ERROR	AMB device discovery	Missing one or more of the following devices: ISM, DDM/DMD/FDM and PMM. Check cables.
0A015-0	Antenna	ERROR	Azi DDM ABS device	Cannot initialise the azimuth DDM/DMD/FDM. Info: 0x00000000: Device not found (possible cabling problem) 0x0000bbaa: Device internal error (replace device) aa=status, bb=state.
0A016-0	Antenna	ERROR	Xel DDM ABS device	Cannot initialise the cross-elevation DDM/DMD/FDM. Info: See 0A015-0.
0A017-0	Antenna	ERROR	Ele DDM ABS device	Cannot initialise the elevation DDM/DMD/FDM. Info: See 0A015-0.

Table I-1: ADU events

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0A018-0	Antenna	ERROR	ISM ABS device	Cannot initialise the ISM Info: 0x00000000: Device not found (possible cabling problem) 0x000cbbaa: Device internal error (replace device) aa=status, bb=state, c=calibration data error.
0A019-0	Antenna	ERROR	PMM ABS device	Cannot initialise the PMM. Info: See 0A015-0.
0A01A-0	Antenna	ERROR	BCM ABS device	Cannot initialise the BCM. Info: See 0A015-0.
0A01E-0	Antenna	ERROR	Sensor sanity	Too many invalid values measured by the ISM during initialization. Check for vibrations or malfunctioning ISM.
0A021-0	Antenna	ERROR	Azi axis calibration	Azimuth axis zero reference not found. Check belt and zero reference module. Info: 0x00000001: Timeout (operation did not complete in time) 0x00000010: Encoder or mechanical problem 0x00000020: Zero reference not found 0x00000040: End stop not found.
0A022-0	Antenna	ERROR	Xel axis calibration	Cross-elevation axis zero reference or end stops not found at expected locations. Check belt, zero reference module, and end stops. Info: See 0A021-0.
0A023-0	Antenna	ERROR	Ele axis calibration	Elevation axis zero reference or end stops not found at expected locations. Check belt, zero reference module, and end stops. Info: See 0A021-0.
0A024-0	Antenna	ERROR	Pol axis calibration	Polarization axis zero reference or end stops not found at expected locations. Check movement of the polarization unit and the zero reference module. Info: See 0A021-0.
0A025-0	Antenna	ERROR	Antenna calibration	One or more errors occurred during antenna start-up Info: 0x00000001: Timeout (calibration did not complete in time) 0x00000010: Azimuth axis 0x00000020: Cross-elevation axis 0x00000040: Elevation axis 0x00000080: Polarization axis

Table I-1: ADU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0A028-0	Antenna	ERROR	Demodulator load	The second receiver demodulator cannot be initialized and loaded correctly.
0A029-0	Antenna	ERROR	XIM PLL lock	The PLL on the VIM does not lock.
0A02B-0	Antenna	ERROR	ABS software version	The ABS software version in the antenna is too old to match the hardware requirements. Upload new software via the web interface.
0A034-0	Antenna	WARNING	ACU communication	The communication link between ACU and antenna is not working.
0A035-0	Antenna	WARNING	ISM data valid	Sensor measurements from the ISM are invalid. This indicates a malfunctioning ISM.
0A036-0	Antenna	WARNING	ISM data range	Sensor measurements from the ISM are out of range.
0A037-0	Antenna	WARNING	GNSS communication	Lost connection to the GNSS device.
0A038-0	Antenna	WARNING	GNSS data range	Received information from the GNSS device which is out of range.
0A039-0	Antenna	WARNING	GNSS device warning	Local GNSS device warning.
0A03A-0	Antenna	WARNING	GNSS device error	Local GNSS device error.
0A03B-0	Antenna	ERROR	Azi DDM shutdown	The azimuth motor control has detected one of the following situations: Extreme temperature, voltage, current or velocity. The motor was then shut down. This is usually a temporary situation and is probably fixed by a restart of the system.
0A03C-0	Antenna	ERROR	Xel DDM shutdown	As Azi DDM/DMD/FDM shutdown but detected by the cross-elevation motor control.
0A03D-0	Antenna	ERROR	Ele DDM shutdown	As Azi DDM/DMD/FDM shutdown but detected by the elevation motor control.
0A03E-0	Antenna	ERROR	PMM shutdown	As Azi DDM/DMD/FDM shutdown but detected by the polarization motor control.
0A03F-0	Antenna	WARNING	AMB timing	This indicates a busy situation. It may occur during installation procedures. No user interaction is required unless it occurs repeatedly.

Table I-1: ADU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0A040-0	Antenna	WARNING	VIM cable attn	The output power cannot be controlled correctly. Check the Tx chain.
0A041-0	Antenna	WARNING	BUC voltage low	The voltage for the BUC is too low, probably caused by a malfunctioning VIM or BUC.
0A042-0	Antenna	WARNING	BUC voltage high	The voltage for the BUC is too high probably caused by a malfunctioning VIM.
0A043-0	Antenna	WARNING	LNB voltage low	The voltage for the LNB is too low probably caused by a malfunctioning VIM or LNB.
0A044-0	Antenna	WARNING	LNB voltage high	The voltage for the LNB is too high probably caused by a malfunctioning VIM.
0A045-0	Antenna	WARNING	PMM fan	The fan is not working or the tacho input from the fan is not connected. Check fan cable and fan.
0A046-0	Antenna	WARNING	Antenna temperature	The temperature of the antenna is too high. Check if the fan is working.
0A047-0	Antenna	ERROR	VIM PLL lock	The PLL of the VIM is out of lock. Check the 10 MHz reference signal.
0A048-0	Antenna	WARNING	VIM tuner lock	The PLL of the second receiver (DVB) is out of lock. Check the 10 MHz reference signal.
0A049-0	Antenna	WARNING	Azi encoder slip	A slip of the azimuth encoder has been detected. If this event is not resolved by itself after some time, check the belt and encoder of the azimuth axis.
0A04A-0	Antenna	WARNING	Xel encoder slip	A slip of the cross-elevation encoder has been detected. If this event is not resolved by itself after some time, check the belt and encoder of the cross-elevation axis.
0A04B-0	Antenna	WARNING	Ele encoder slip	A slip of the elevation encoder has been detected. If this event is not resolved by itself after some time, check the belt and encoder of the elevation axis.
0A04C-0	Antenna	WARNING	Pol encoder slip	A slip of the polarization encoder has been detected. If this event is not resolved by itself after some time, check the belt and encoder of the polarization axis.

Table I-1: ADU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0A04D-0	Antenna	WARNING	GNSS position	No position available from the GNSS device or position too old.
0A04E-0	Antenna	WARNING	GNSS velocity	No velocity available from the GNSS device.
0A04F-0	Antenna	WARNING	Heading data	Heading information is missing in the antenna.
0A050-0	Antenna	ERROR	Azi DDM communication	Communication error between PCM and azimuth DDM/DMD/FDM. Check SUB-D connectors and cables.
0A051-0	Antenna	ERROR	Xel DDM communication	Communication error between PCM and cross-elevation DDM/DMD/FDM. Check SUB-D connectors and cables.
0A052-0	Antenna	ERROR	Ele DDM communication	Communication error between PCM and elevation DDM/DMD/FDM. Check SUB-D connectors and cables
0A053-0	Antenna	ERROR	ISM communication	Communication error between PCM and ISM. Check SUB-D connectors and cables.
0A054-0	Antenna	ERROR	PMM communication	Communication error between PCM and PMM. Check SUB-D connectors and cables.
0A055-0	Antenna	WARNING	Azi DDM warning	The azimuth motor controller has temporarily observed an unusual situation for temperature, voltage, current or velocity. No user interaction required.
0A056-0	Antenna	WARNING	Xel DDM warning	The cross-elevation motor controller has temporarily observed an unusual situation for temperature, voltage, current or velocity. No user interaction required.
0A057-0	Antenna	WARNING	Ele DDM warning	The elevation motor controller has temporarily observed an unusual situation for temperature, voltage, current or velocity. No user interaction required.
0A058-0	Antenna	WARNING	PMM warning	The polarization motor controller has temporarily observed an unusual situation with regards to temperature, voltage, current or velocity. No user interaction required.

Table I-1: ADU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0A059-0	Antenna	WARNING	Azi cal. limits	Check limits of the calibration result for the azimuth axis are exceeded. Pointing performance may be degraded. Info: 0x00000040: End stop detected before expected limit 0x00000100: Zero width is low 0x00000200: Zero width is high 0x00000400: Zero slack is high 0x00001000: Friction average is high 0x00002000: Friction peak is high 0x00004000: Friction asymmetry is high Zero width low/high: Zero reference module placement may be incorrect. Zero slack high: Mechanical slack may be too high. Friction average/peak high: Mechanical friction is higher than expected. Friction asymmetry high: Mechanical imbalance may be too high.
0A05A-0	Antenna	WARNING	Xel cal. limits	Check limits of the calibration result for the cross-elevation axis are exceeded. Pointing performance may be degraded. Info: See 0A059-0.
0A05B-0	Antenna	WARNING	Ele cal. limits	Check limits of the calibration result for the elevation axis are exceeded. Pointing performance may be degraded. Info: See 0A059-0.
0A05C-0	Antenna	WARNING	Pol cal. limits	Check limits of the calibration result for the polarization axis are exceeded. Pointing performance may be degraded. Info: See 0A059-0.
0A05D-0	Antenna	WARNING	ISM warning	The ISM has temporarily observed an unusual situation for temperature or voltage. No user interaction required. If repeated after cooldown and reboot, check if the ISM or cables around it are defective.
0A05E-0	Antenna	WARNING	Low elevation	The antenna is not allowed to transmit because the elevation is too low.
0A05F-0	Antenna	WARNING	Heading range	Heading data range error. External heading unit supplies unreliable data.
0A062-0	Antenna	WARNING	High elevation	The antenna cannot perform acquisition in gyro-free mode because the elevation is too high.

Table I-1: ADU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0A065-0	Antenna	ERROR	Deploy/Stow	Deploy/stow error. The antenna did not properly unlock (deploy), or the stow switch never closed (stow).
0A066-0	Antenna	ERROR	OMT error	Problem with OMT. Temperature out of range or OMT cable may be broken.
0A067-0	Antenna	WARNING	Automatic stow	The antenna automatically stowed because it detected significant movement.
0A068-0	Antenna	WARNING	Polarization tuning	Polarization tuning was not successful. Polarization may be incorrect.
0A069-0	Antenna	ERROR	BCM error	The BCM PLL failed to initialize.

Table I-1: ADU events (Continued)

I.3 List of ACU events

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
08060-0	ADM	WARNING	Antenna modem	ACU/Antenna communication error detected (framing and parity). If the situation is persistent, check if cable specifications comply (length and attenuation).
08061-0	ADM	WARNING	VMU linux shell password	The specified password (root) for the satellite modem is not accepted by the modem.
08062-0	ADM	WARNING	VMU debug shell password	The specified password (user) for the satellite modem is not accepted by the modem.
08063-0	ADM	ERROR	Antenna connection	The ACU has lost connection with the antenna.
08064-0	ADM	ERROR	ADM PLL lock	The intermediate frequency PLL is not in lock. Check the external reference signal.
08065-0	ADM	WARNING	GNSS data	Missing GNSS data (fix).
08066-0	ADM	WARNING	Heading data	Missing heading information. Check cable and heading provider device.
08067-0	ADM	ERROR	PCB temperature	ADM temperature too high. Make sure there is compliance with the environmental specifications.
08068-0	ADM	ERROR	PSM power	The PSM fails to provide the requested supply voltage.
08069-0	ADM	WARNING	Blocking Zone	The antenna has entered a blocking zone.
0806A-0	ADM	WARNING	VMU connection	The ACU has lost connection to the satellite modem.
0806B-0	ADM	WARNING	ROSS connection	The ACU has lost connection with the ROSS device.
0806C-0	ADM	ERROR	VMU frequency setup	There is a mismatch in the frequency setup. Probably the satellite modem is not configured correctly to match the requirements of the ACU and antenna. A common mismatch is the absence of Rx or Tx LO parameter in the satellite modem.

Table I-2: ACU events

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0806D-0	ADM	ERROR	Antenna power	The antenna supply voltage is outside the allowed limits. This may happen if the PSM fails to provide the requested supply voltage.
0806E-0	ADM	ERROR	VMU reference signal	There is no VMU Rx or Tx reference signal. Whether this is Rx or Tx reference depends on the user's selection on the modem profile page in the web interface. Make sure the VMU Rx/Tx cable is connected and that the VMU is configured to output the RX/TX reference signal.
0806F-0	ADM	WARNING	ROSS synchronization	The ACU has become out of sync with the ROSS device, most likely because the ACU has been replaced, or the ROSS satellite profile is new. A manual (forced) handoff sequence must be initiated from the ROSS, refer to the ROSS manual.
08073-0	ADM	WARNING	Slave connection	The system is configured as a dual antenna master, but no dual antenna slave is connected to it. Either disable the dual antenna master in the web interface or configure a another system as a dual antenna slave.
08074-0	ADM	WARNING	Master connection	The system is configured as a dual antenna slave, but it was not possible to connect to the dual antenna master. Check that the IP address entered in the modem profile is correct and check that the master and slave systems are physically connected as described in the manual.
08075-0	ADM	WARNING	Rx cable calibration	The calibration of the ACU-antenna cable failed. The cable could be defective, too long, of too poor quality, not properly connected, or the VIM or ACU hardware could be defective.

Table I-2: ACU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
08076-0	ADM	WARNING	Dual mode configuration	The system is configured as a dual antenna system, but the system setup is invalid. The dual mode function may not work properly or performance could be degraded. Info code: xxxxxx1 = Antenna types are different, they must be identical xxxxxx2 = Master or Slave hardware does not support dual mode operation. xxxxxx3 = Software version on master and slave are different, they must be identical.
08078-0	ADM	WARNING	VMU TX frequency invalid	The satellite modem did not provide a Tx frequency, or it is invalid. A default Tx frequency is assumed, but this may degrade Tx performance. To remove this warning re-configure the modem to provide the correct Tx frequency.
08079-0	ADM	WARNING	ACU Fan	Internal fan is malfunctioning.
0807A-0	ADM	WARNING	Automatic azimuth calibration pending	Automatic azimuth calibration mode is enabled. The system tries to perform an azimuth calibration using the target satellite whenever satellite data is received from the modem. After successful calibration the feature is automatically disabled and the system returns to normal operation. WARNING: If a system has not completed azimuth calibration after the installation, the blocking zones may appear to be at wrong angles.
0807C-0	ADM	ERROR	System configuration	Invalid ACU / antenna combination.
0807D-0	ADM	WARNING	TRIA communication	The SurfBeam modem cannot communicate with the TRIA. Try power cycling the modem.
0807F-0	ADM	WARNING	Local administration enabled	Local administration mode is currently enabled. This allows login without providing the admin password. Will be disabled after 1 hour or next reboot.
08082-0	ADM	WARNING	Modem configuration load	Unable to load configuration on modem. Info: 0x00000001: Configuration index invalid 0x00000002: Changing parameter not permitted 0x00000004: Modem not in Remote Mode

Table I-2: ACU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
08100-0	ADM	ERROR	PSM low voltage (22 V)	The ADM measures a different antenna voltage than expected. If the problem is not solved by a restart, and the PSM is not reporting any errors, the ADM is probably defective.
08101-0	ADM	ERROR	PSM high voltage (48 V)	The ADM measures a different antenna voltage than expected. Check for short circuit of the antenna coax connector. If the problem is not solved by a restart, and the PSM is not reporting any errors, the ADM is probably defective.
08102-0	ADM	ERROR	PSM 5 V power	Internal voltage supply error of the ADM.
08103-0	ADM	ERROR	ADM hotswap	The ACU is not able to supply the correct voltage to the antenna. Check for short circuits in coax cable and the antenna
08104-0	ADM	ERROR	Antenna communication	The ACU cannot communicate with the antenna. Check cable and antenna.
08107-0	ADM	ERROR	ADM FPGA load	The ADM FPGA cannot be initialized and loaded.
08108-0	ADM	ERROR	TX Power Detector calibration	The power detector calibration is not valid.
08109-0	ADM	ERROR	Antenna XIM data	There is a mismatch in the antenna configuration data. Either the PCM or the VIM in the antenna are malfunctioning or one of them has been replaced. In the latter case, select which is the original device in the web interface and restart the system.
0810A-0	ADM	ERROR	ADM production data	Production data has been corrupted.
0810B-0	ADM	ERROR	Antenna software version	An error has occurred during upload of software to the antenna, the antenna software version is not as expected. Either the software in the ACU does not meet the minimum version required by the antenna, the software image in the ACU is corrupted or the upload procedure failed because of a communication error.
0810C-0	ADM	ERROR	File system integrity	One or more file system partitions are corrupt. You may have lost your settings and collected statistics. If restarting the system does not help, contact your service partner.

Table I-2: ACU events (Continued)

Error ID	Unit	Severity	Name	Description
0810E-0	ADM	ERROR	RF calibration	The RF calibration is not valid.
08840-0	ADM	WARNING	Master PLL lock	The master PLL has lost lock. Check the input reference signal.
09000-0	KDM	ERROR	KDM 3V3 supply	Internal 3V3 voltage supply error in the KDM.
09001-0	KDM	ERROR	KDM 12V supply	Internal 12V voltage supply error in the KDM.
09002-0	KDM	ERROR	KDM display	Display hardware error in the KDM.
09010-0	KDM	ERROR	KDM link/SW version	Link to the KDM module could not be established. Either the KDM board is malfunctioning, or - if the system software has just been updated - the software is too old and is not compatible with the KDM hardware.
0B000-0	PSM	ERROR	PSM production data	Missing or invalid production data in the PSM. Replace it.
0B001-0	PSM	ERROR	NMEA 2000 identifier	Missing or invalid production data in the PSM. Replace it.
0B010-0	PSM	ERROR	PSM link/SW version	Link to the PSM module could not be established. Either the PSM board is malfunctioning, or - if the system software has just been updated - the software is too old and is not compatible with the PSM hardware.
0B060-0	PSM	WARNING	NMEA 0183 parse error	Parse errors detected on the NMEA 0183 interface. Check NMEA 0183 cable, signal levels etc.
0B061-0	PSM	WARNING	Power supply temperature	ACU Power supply temperature is high. Improve ventilation or move to a cooler area. Info: 00000000 = Temperature warning,

Table I-2: ACU events (Continued)

Approvals

J.1 Overview

This appendix lists the approvals for SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku:

- *CE (RED)*
- *Eutelsat S.A – ESV Summary Sheet*
- *Russian Maritime Register of Shipping*
- *Japan Radio Law (AC powered), SAILOR 900*
- *Japan Radio Law (AC powered), SAILOR 900HP*
- *Intelsat qualification*

J.2 CE (RED)

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku and the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power are CE certified (RED directive) as stated in the “EU Declaration of Conformity”, enclosed in copy on the next page.



EU Declaration of Conformity

Hereby **Thrane & Thrane A/S trading as Cobham SATCOM** declares that the following equipment complies with the specifications of:

RED directive 2014/53/EU concerning Radio Equipment

Equipment included in this declaration

Ku Models	Description	Part no.
7060C	SAILOR 600 VSAT Ku	
7080A	SAILOR 800 VSAT Ku	
7080B	SAILOR 800 VSAT Ku High Power	
7090B	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku	
7090E	SAILOR 900 VSAT High Power	
7090I	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimized	
7090J	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimized High Power	
Consists of		
7006C	SAILOR 600 VSAT Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407006C-xxx
7008A	SAILOR 800 VSAT Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407008A-xxx-01
7008B	SAILOR 800 VSAT Ku HP Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407008B-xxx
7009B	SAILOR 900 VSAT Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009B-xxx-01
7009E	SAILOR 900 VSAT HP Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009E-xxx
7009I	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimized Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009I-xxx
7009J	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku Optimized HP Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009J-xxx
7016C	SAILOR Antenna Control Unit (ACU)	407016C-xxx

GX Models	Description	Part no.
7060A	SAILOR 60 GX	
7060F	SAILOR 60 GX High Power	
7090C	SAILOR 100 GX	
7090G	SAILOR 100 GX High Power	
Consists of		
7006A	SAILOR 60 GX Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407006A-xxx-01
7006F	SAILOR 60 GX HP Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407006F-xxx
7009C	SAILOR 100 GX Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009C-xxx-01
7009G	SAILOR 100 GX HP Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009G-xxx
7016C	SAILOR Antenna Control Unit (ACU)	407016C-xxx
7023A	SAILOR GX Modem Unit (GMU)	407023A-xxx

Ka Models	Description	Part no.
7060B	SAILOR 600 VSAT Ka	
7090D	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ka	
Consists of		
7006B	SAILOR 600 VSAT Ka Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407006B-xxx-01
7009D	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ka Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009D-xxx-01
7016C	SAILOR Antenna Control Unit (ACU)	407016C-xxx

Viasat Ka Models	Description	Part no.
7060D	SAILOR 600 Viasat Ka	
7090F	SAILOR 900 Viasat Ka	
Consists of		
7006D	SAILOR 600 Viasat Ka Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407006B-xxx
7009F	SAILOR 900 Viasat Ka Above Deck Unit (ADU)	407009D-xxx
7016C	SAILOR Antenna Control Unit (ACU)	407016C-xxx-001
7024A	SAILOR pTRIA Interface Unit (PIU)	407024A-xxx

“xxx” is 3 characters, that determine the product branding, where only labels, logo and user interface varies.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<http://sync.cobham.com/satcom/support/downloads>

J.3 Eutelsat S.A – ESV Summary Sheet

Eutelsat s.a.

ESV Summary Sheet



Manufacturer:

Thrane & Thrane A/S
Lundtoftegaardsvej 93 D
DK-2800 Kgs. Lyngby
DENMARK

Tel: + 45 39 55 88 00

Fax: + 45 39 55 88 88

<mailto:info@thrane.com>

Antenna model:

SAILOR 900 VSAT 407009B-00500
and 407009E-00500

Antenna aperture dimensions:

1.03 m

Standard:

M

Characterization date:

30-04-2013

Last update:

19-01-2017

System Description:

Stabilised maritime antenna – ring focus Gregorian configuration – Sandwich foam pre-preg layers radome. Three axis stabilization platform with conical RF tracking.

BUC 407009B-0500 NextGenWave 8W rating

407009E-0500 NextGenWave 20W rating

LNB Philtech

OMT Thrane & Thrane TT 60-131011

Models Characterized:

Standard configuration: linear orthogonal polarization with co-polarized or cross-polarized signal reception option.

Maximum Allowed EIRP:

For digital carriers transmitted at the satellite receive contour of 0 dB/K (EESS 502 refers):

39.8 dBW / 40 kHz for an orbital separation of the adjacent satellite $\geq 2.5^\circ$

39.6 dBW / 40 KHz for an orbital separation of the adjacent satellite $\geq 2.0^\circ$

35.6 dBW / 40 kHz for an orbital separation of the adjacent satellite $\geq 1.5^\circ$

Tx Frequency:

13.75 – 14.50 GHz

Rx Frequency:

10.70-12.75 GHz

Tx Gain:

41.1dBi (typical at 14.25 GHz)

Rx Gain:

40.2 dBi (typical at 11.7 GHz)

Tx XPD:

>30 dB within -1 dB contour

Rx XPD:

>30 dB within -1 dB contour

G/T (measured with radome)

19.9 dB/K @ 12.75 GHz 30 ° Elevation

Remarks:

1-The manufacturer states that the RMS pointing error is less than 0.20° for the following ship motions:

Roll = 30° in a period of 6 sec

Pitch = 15° in a period of 4 sec

Yaw = 10° in a period of 10 sec

2-The RF performance characterization was performed on one antenna unit with radome, at the France Telecom test range of La Turbie, France on the 18-20 April 2013.

3-Thrane & Thrane has inserted in the ACU software a look-up table with the polarization skew of the Eutelsat satellites, to protect against the mishandling of polarization skew values by installers.

4-The characterization's validity is subject to regular submission of patterns to confirm that the system remains compliant with the Eutelsat standards.

Restrictions:

The use of Rx band 10.7 to 10.95 GHz may be subject to impairments because the isolation of the sidelobes at 3° from the boresight is less than 20 dB at 10.70 GHz (17.8 dB). Nevertheless these operations may be exceptionally authorized according to a valid Eutelsat transmission plan.

J.4 Russian Maritime Register of Shipping

<p>РОССИЙСКИЙ МОРСКОЙ РЕГИСТР СУДОХОДСТВА RUSSIAN MARITIME REGISTER OF SHIPPING</p>  <p>СВИДЕТЕЛЬСТВО О ТИПОВОМ ОДОБРЕНИИ TYPE APPROVAL CERTIFICATE</p>	<p>Стр. 1 / 2 Page. 1 / 2</p> <p>6.8.3</p>
<p>Изготовитель / Manufacturer: Thrane & Thrane A/S VAT DK-65 72 46 18</p> <p>Адрес / Address: Lundtoftegaardsvej 93 D, DK-2800 Kgs., Lyngby, Denmark Тел/Tel: +45 39 558800 Факс/Fax: +45 39 558888</p> <p>Изделие* / Product*: Судовая земная станция спутниковой связи, тип SAILOR 900 VSAT KU / 7090B</p> <p>Ship Earth Station of satellite communication, type SAILOR 900 VSAT KU / 7090B</p> <p>Код номенклатуры / Code of nomenclature: 04090000</p> <p>На основании освидетельствования и проведенных испытаний удостоверяется, что вышеупомянутое(ые) изделие(я) удовлетворяет(ют) требованиям Российского морского регистра судоходства. This is to certify that on the basis of the survey and tests carried out the above mentioned item(s) complies(ly) with the requirements of Russian Maritime Register of Shipping. Изделие отвечает применимым требованиям части IV Правил по оборудованию морских судов Российского морского регистра судоходства (изд. 2017 г.), Резолюции ИМО А.694(17). Item meets the applicable requirements of part IV of the Rules for the Equipment of Sea-Going Ships of Russian Maritime Register of Shipping (ed. 2017), IMO Resolution A.694(17).</p> <p>Настоящее Свидетельство о типовом одобрении действительно до 05.09.2022 This Type Approval Certificate is valid until</p> <p>Настоящее Свидетельство о типовом одобрении теряет силу в случаях, установленных в Правилах технического наблюдения за постройкой судов и изготовлением материалов и изделий для судов. This Type Approval Certificate becomes invalid in cases stipulated in Rules for the Technical Supervision during Construction of Ships and Manufacture of Shipboard Materials and Products.</p> <p>Дата выдачи / Date of issue: 05.09.2017 № 17.01368.315</p> <p>Российский морской регистр судоходства Russian Maritime Register of Shipping</p> <p style="text-align: center;">  М.П. (подпись) / L.S. (signature) В.Б.Викулин / V.Vikulin (фамилия, инициалы) / name </p> <p><small>*Дополнительную информацию смотри на обороте. Additional information see overleaf.</small></p>	

Технические данные

Technical data

Диапазон частот передатчика / приемника: 13,75 ГГц - 14,50 ГГц / 10,70 ГГц - 12,75 ГГц;

Питание: 100 - 240 В переменного тока (50 Гц / 60 Гц);

Диапазон рабочих температур: от -25° С до +55° С;

Диапазон температур хранения: от -40° С до +85° С.

Судовая земная станция спутниковой связи, тип SAILOR 900 VSAT KU / 7090B, состоит из антенного блока TT-7009B / 7009B, блока управления антенной TT-7016C / 7016C.

Дополнительное оборудование:

спутниковый модем SkyEdge I / SkyEdge II / SkyEdge II Access / SkyEdge IP / SkyEdge PRO / Evolution X3 / Evolution X5 / Eastar UHP-1000 / Hughes HX50 / CDM 570 / CDM 570L / CDM 625 / GLT-1000 / iDirect 3000 / iDirect 5000 / iDirect 7000 / iDirect 8000 / Satlink 2900.

Frequency ranges transmitter / receiver: 13.75 GHz - 14.50 GHz / 10.70 GHz - 12.75 GHz;

Power supply: 100-240 V AC (50 Hz / 60 Hz);

Operational temperature range: -25° C to +55° C;

Storage temperature range: -40° C to +85° C.

Ship Earth Station of satellite communication, type SAILOR 900 VSAT KU / 7090B, consists aerial unit TT-7009B / 7009B, antenna control unit TT-7016C / 7016C.

Optional equipment:

satellite modem SkyEdge I / SkyEdge II / SkyEdge II Access / SkyEdge IP / SkyEdge PRO / Evolution X3 / Evolution X5 / Eastar UHP-1000 / Hughes HX50 / CDM 570 / CDM 570L / CDM 625 / GLT-1000 / iDirect 3000 / iDirect 5000 / iDirect 7000 / iDirect 8000 / Satlink 2900.

Техническая документация и дата ее одобрения Российским морским регистром судоходства

Technical documentation and the date of its approval by Russian Maritime Register of Shipping

SAILOR 900 VSAT installation manual 98-138976-E одобрен письмом РС N 315-45-235176 от 28.08.2017.

SAILOR 900 VSAT installation manual 98-138976-E was approved by RS letter No. 315-45-235176 of 28.08.2017.

Образец изделия испытан под техническим наблюдением Российского морского регистра судоходства.

Product's specimen has been tested under the technical supervision of Russian Maritime Register of Shipping.

Акт № 17.01364.315

Report No.

от 05.09.2017

of

Область применения и ограничения

Application and limitations

Изделие может быть использовано на морских судах в качестве дополнительного оборудования.

Product may be used on board sea-going ships as additional equipment.

Вид документа, выдаваемого на изделие

Type of document issued for product

Свидетельство Российского морского регистра судоходства (ф. 6.5.30/6.5.31).

Certificate of the Russian Maritime Register of Shipping (f. 6.5.30/6.5.31).



06/2015

17.01368.315

J.5 Japan Radio Law (AC powered), SAILOR 900

CTC advanced GmbH		<small>CETECOM ICT Services is now</small>
<small>Untertürkheimer Strasse 6-10, D-66117 Saarbrücken, Germany</small>		CTC advanced <small>member of RWTUV group</small>
Conformity Assessment Body Registered Certification Body for Japan		
認証書 TYPE - BASED CERTIFICATE		
Approval Holder <small>認証を受けた者</small>	Thrane & Thrane A/S trading as Cobham SATCOM. Lundtoftegaardsvej 93D 2800 Kgs. Lyngby-Denmark	
Manufacturer Name <small>製造者名</small>	Thrane & Thrane A/S trading as Cobham SATCOM. Lundtoftegaardsvej 93D 2800 Kgs. Lyngby-Denmark	
Model Name <small>型式又は名称</small>	SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku	<i>Terminal approval: Each different Host-equipment must be submitted to final Terminal approval!</i>
Classification of Specified Radio equipment <small>特定無線設備の種類</small>	Ordinance concerning Technical Regulations Conformity Certification etc. of Specified Radio Equipment 特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明等に関する規則	
	Article 2, clause 1, Item 30-2 Maritime mobile earth station <i>E S V 携帯移動地球局 (船上地球局)</i>	
Type of Emissions, Frequency and Antenna Power <small>電波の形式、周波数及び空中線電力</small>	390KG7W 14005.000MHz ~14495.000MHz (390kHz 間隔 1257 波) 8W 2M35G7W 14005.000MHz ~14495.000MHz (2.35MHz 間隔 209 波) 8W 5M75G7W 14005.000MHz ~14495.000MHz (5.75MHz 間隔 86 波) 8W	
Certified Number <small>認証番号</small>	202-LSG033	
Certified Date <small>認証をした年 月 日</small>	2018-05-23	
<p>上記のとおり、電波法第 38 条の 24 第 1 項の規定に基づく認証を行ったものであることを証する。 This is to certify that the above-mentioned certification by type has been granted in accordance with the provisions of Article 38-24, Paragraph 1 of the Radio Law.</p>		
<p>Recognized by The Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) via</p> <p>Bundesnetzagentur BNetzA-CAB-03/25-51</p> 	<p>CTC advanced GmbH Lothar Spitzer</p> <p><i>Signature</i></p> 	<p>Digital unterschrieben von lothar.spitzer@ctcadvanced.com DN: cn=lothar.spitzer@ctcadvanced.com Datum: 2018.05.23 10:37:27 +02'00'</p>
<small>Page 1 of 1</small>		

J.6 Japan Radio Law (AC powered), SAILOR 900HP

CTC advanced GmbH		<small>CETECOM ICT Services is now</small>
<small>Untertürkheimer Strasse 6-10, D-66117 Saarbrücken, Germany</small>		CTC advanced <small>member of RWTÜV group</small>
Conformity Assessment Body Registered Certification Body for Japan		
認証書 TYPE - BASED CERTIFICATE		
Approval Holder <small>認証を受けた者</small>	Thrane & Thrane A/S trading as Cobham SATCOM. Lundtoftegaardsvej 93D 2800 Kgs. Lyngby-Denmark	
Manufacturer Name <small>製造者名</small>	Thrane & Thrane A/S trading as Cobham SATCOM. Lundtoftegaardsvej 93D 2800 Kgs. Lyngby-Denmark	
Model Name <small>型式又は名称</small>	SAILOR 900 VSAT High Power	<i>Terminal approval: Each different Host-equipment must be submitted to final Terminal approval!</i>
Classification of Specified Radio equipment <small>特定無線設備の種類</small>	Ordinance concerning Technical Regulations Conformity Certification etc. of Specified Radio Equipment 特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明等に関する規則	
	Article 2, clause 1, Item 30-2 Maritime mobile earth station <i>E S V 携帯移動地球局 (船上地球局)</i>	
Type of Emissions, Frequency and Antenna Power <small>電波の形式、周波数 及び空中線電力</small>	390KG7W 14005.000MHz ~14495.000MHz (390kHz 間隔 1257 波) 20W 2M35G7W 14005.000MHz ~14495.000MHz (2.35MHz 間隔 209 波) 20W 5M75G7W 14005.000MHz ~14495.000MHz (5.75MHz 間隔 86 波) 20W	
Certified Number <small>認証番号</small>	202-LSG034	
Certified Date <small>認証をした年 月 日</small>	2018-05-23	
 上記のとおり、電波法第 38 条の 24 第 1 項の規定に基づく認証を行ったものであることを証する。 This is to certify that the above-mentioned certification by type has been granted in accordance with the provisions of Article 38-24, Paragraph 1 of the Radio Law.		
<small>Recognized by The Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) via Bundesnetzagentur BNetzA-CAB-03/25-51 </small>	CTC advanced GmbH Lothar Spitzer <i>Signature</i> 	<small>Digital unterschrieben von lothar.spitzer@ctcadva nced.com DN: cn=lothar.spitzer@ctca dvanced.com Datum: 2018.05.23 10:26:48 +02'00'</small>
<small>Page 1of 1</small>		

J.7 Intelsat qualification

The SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku system and the SAILOR 900 VSAT Ku High Power system have received confirmation of successful qualification testing, enabling these antenna systems to be used by contracted service providers to deliver commercial services on the IntelsatOne Flex maritime platform.

A

ABS	ADU Bus Slave
ACU	Antenna Control Unit
ADM	ACU Digital Module. A main processor board in the ACU.
ADS	Antenna Diversity Solution
AMB	Antenna Module Bus

C

CM	Continuous Monitoring
----	-----------------------

D

DDM	DC-Motor Driver Module
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol for assigning dynamic IP addresses to devices on a network. With dynamic addressing, a device can have a different IP address every time it connects to the network.
DNS	Domain Name System. A system translating server names (URLs) to server addresses.
DVB	Digital Video Broadcasting, a set of standards relating to digital television.

E

ESD	ElectroStatic Discharge
-----	-------------------------

F

FBB	FleetBroadband
FPGA	Field Programmable Gate Array

G

GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System, e.g. GPS.
GPL	General Public License, Software license, which guarantees individuals, organizations and companies the freedom to use, study, share (copy), and modify the software.

H

HDT	HeaDing True, NMEA sentence.
-----	------------------------------

I

ISM	Inertial Sensor Module
-----	------------------------

K

KDM	Keyboard and Display Module of the ACU
-----	--

L

LAN	Local Area Network
LEN	Load Equivalent Number
LGPL	Lesser General Public License
LO	Local Oscillator. LO frequency used by BUC and LNB.

M

MIB	Management Information Base
-----	-----------------------------

N

NID Network IDentification

NMEA National Marine Electronics Association (standard). A combined electrical and data specification for communication between marine electronic devices such as echo sounder, sonars, anemometer (wind speed and direction), gyrocompass, autopilot, GPS receivers and many other types of instruments. It has been defined by, and is controlled by, the U.S.-based National Marine Electronics Association.

O

OID Object Identifier, in the context of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), consists of the object identifier for an object in a Management Information Base (MIB).

OMT Ortho Mode Transducer

P

PAST Person Activated Self Test

PCM Pedestal Control Module

PMM Polarisation Motor Module

POST Power On Self Test. A system test that is activated each time the system is powered on.

PSM Power Supply Module

R

RF Radio Frequency. Electromagnetic wave frequencies between about 3 kilohertz and about 300 gigahertz including the frequencies used for communications signals (radio, television, cell-phone and satellite transmissions) or radar signals.

RFI Radio Frequency Interference. A non-desired radio signal which creates noise or dropouts in the wireless system or noise in a sound system.

ROSS Roaming Oceanic Satellite Server

S

SNMP Simple Network Management Protocol. An Internet-standard protocol for managing devices on IP networks. It is used mostly in network management systems to monitor network-attached devices for conditions that warrant administrative attention.

U

UCLI User Command Line Interface

V

VIM VSAT Interface Module

VMU VSAT Modem Unit

W

WAN Wide Area Network

X

XIM Xim Interface Module, term for the module that connects the PCM and the ACU. X stands for one of various interface modules.

Z

ZRM Zero Reference Module

A

- access
 - limit, 6-44
- acquisition
 - gyro-free, 6-7
 - search pattern, 6-6
 - search pattern, inclined orbit, 6-6
 - time, 6-7
- ACU
 - description, 2-8
 - LED, 8-10
- ACU display
 - description, 6-48
- ACU events, I-9
- ACU interfaces, 2-8
- ACU rack version
 - connector panel, overview, 4-1
 - grounding, 3-24
 - installing, 3-23
 - LEDs, display and keypad, 4-1
- administration
 - settings, 6-43
- administrator
 - login, web interface, 6-2
 - login, command line interface, E-1
- ADU
 - connector, 4-2
 - description, 2-3
 - grounding, optimal, 3-21
- ADU cable
 - alternatives, 3-22
 - modem attenuation, 3-22
- ADU cable loop
 - DC-resistance, 3-22
- ADU events, I-2
- aluminum hulls
 - grounding, H-6
- antenna
 - drainage, 3-15
 - grounding recommendations, H-2
 - installation location, 3-3
 - isolation from mounting base, H-9
 - mast design, 3-7
 - obstructions, 3-4
 - opening, 3-20
 - radiation, 3-6
 - stabilization, 2-3

- antenna cable
 - check condition, 6-13
- antenna dish position
 - fix, 2-6, 8-15
- approval
 - Eutelsat, J-3
- Apstar, G-3
- Astra2 satellite, G-2
- attenuation
 - ADU cable, 3-22
- attenuator margin
 - cable calibration, 6-13
- Australia satellite, G-2
- azimuth calibration, 6-4
 - DVB symbol rate minimum, 6-12
 - flow chart, 6-15

B

- baud rate
 - NMEA 0183, 4-3
- beam switching, D-3
- BEIDOU, 6-6
- BITE test, 8-10
- blockage
 - performance optimization, D-1
- blocking zones
 - azimuth, 3-5
 - dual antenna, B-5
 - elevation, 3-5
 - setup, 6-31
 - statistics, 6-40
- braces
 - mast, 2 pieces, 3-11
 - mast, 3 pieces, 3-11
- browser settings
 - for web interface, 6-22
- BUC
 - LO frequency, A-9, A-11
 - output power, 6-25
 - power, 6-18
- BUC data sheet, A-9, A-11

C

- cable
 - calibration data reset, 6-47
 - ground, H-8

- cable calibration, 6-11
 - attenuator margin, 6-13
 - flow chart, 6-15
 - service, 6-13
 - cable loss
 - ADU cable, 3-19
 - cable requirements
 - NMEA, 4-3
 - cable type
 - LAN, 4-6
 - calibration
 - azimuth, 6-4, 6-8
 - cable, 6-8, 6-11
 - elevation requirements, 6-12
 - error codes, 6-10
 - flow chart, 6-15
 - NID, 6-12
 - polarisation, 6-12
 - satellite data, 6-10, 6-12, 6-30, G-1
 - service profile, 6-11
 - calibration data, 6-47
 - enter, 6-11
 - reset, 6-47
 - Change network, 6-45
 - China satellite, G-2
 - cleaning the radome, 3-15
 - CLI, E-1
 - command line interface, E-1
 - config, E-3
 - demo, E-3
 - dual antenna, E-3
 - exit, E-4
 - help, E-2
 - modem, E-5
 - satellite, E-5
 - status, E-8
 - supported commands, E-2
 - system, E-8
 - track, E-9
 - zone, E-10
 - commands
 - Serial, D-14
 - UCLI, E-2
 - commands in command line interface, E-2
 - compass safe distance, -iv
 - compression point
 - P1 dB, BUC, 6-21
 - COMTECH 570 L and ROSS
 - examples, D-17
 - Comtech 570L
 - setup, D-18
 - Comtech 570L and ROSS box
 - setup, D-16
 - COMTECH CDM 840
 - setup, D-21
 - condensation in antenna, 3-15
 - config
 - command line interface, E-3
 - configuration
 - copy, 6-45
 - export, 6-45
 - import, 6-45
 - LAN network, 6-34
 - site map, 6-19
 - step-by-step, 6-1
 - configuration examples
 - COMTECH 570L and ROSS, D-17
 - Gilat SkyEdge II, D-30
 - Inmarsat G5, D-33
 - OpenAMIP, D-9
 - Serial, D-15
 - STM Satlink 2900, D-27
 - Configuration program, 6-1
 - connect
 - web interface, 6-1
 - connector
 - ADU, 4-2
 - LAN, 4-6
 - management PC, 4-6
 - modem control, 4-6
 - NMEA 0183/2000, 4-3
 - RS-232, 4-5
 - RS-422, 4-5
 - service port, 4-6
 - TNC, 4-2
 - VMU Rx-Tx, 4-2, 4-3
 - contact information, 8-1
 - corrosion
 - smoke deposits, 3-15
 - country restrictions
 - VSAT, -v
- ## D
- default
 - reset to factory settings, 6-46
 - default gateway, 6-36
 - degradation
 - due to the radar, 3-13
 - Ku-band connection, 3-13
 - demo
 - command line interface, E-3
 - DHCP client, 6-36

- DHCP server, 6-36
 - diagnostic report, 6-38, 8-1
 - display
 - ACU, description, 6-48
 - distance
 - antenna to FBB equipment, 3-14
 - antenna to GPS receiver, 3-14
 - antenna to radar, 3-12
 - DNS setup, 6-36
 - drainage of antenna, 3-15
 - drawing
 - ACU rack version, A-6
 - ADU, A-5
 - driver
 - Inmarsat G5, D-31
 - dual antenna
 - blocking zone, B-8
 - cabling, B-4
 - command line interface, E-3
 - commissioning, B-9
 - configuration, B-10
 - installation, B-2
 - line up, B-9
 - parts needed, B-3
 - single antenna use, B-9
 - dual mode
 - external switch, B-2
 - remote access, B-2
 - dual-antenna mode
 - heading input, B-3
 - slave DASHBOARD, B-5
 - DVB symbol rate
 - azimuth calibration, 6-12
 - DVB-S, 6-12
 - DVB-S satellite data, G-1
 - DVB-S2, 6-12
- E**
- elevation angle
 - minimum, 6-30
 - elevation cutoff, 6-30
 - E-mail setup, 6-37
 - error codes, I-1
 - calibration, 6-10
 - error messages, 8-3, I-1
 - ACU, I-9
 - ADU, I-2
 - ETSI
 - elevation angle, 6-30
 - Eutelsat
 - approval, J-3
 - events, I-1
 - ACU, I-9
 - ADU, I-2
 - list of active, 8-3
 - UTC time, 6-21
 - exit
 - command line interface, E-4
 - export configuration, 6-45
 - external heading input, 6-5
 - external switch
 - dual mode, B-2
- F**
- factory default
 - calibration data, 6-47
 - reset, 6-46
 - factory defaults
 - reset to, 8-4
 - failure states
 - view, 8-17
 - FBB
 - distance from antenna, 3-14
 - interference, 3-14
 - FCC
 - elevation angle, 6-30
 - Features, 2-2
 - fiberglass hulls
 - grounding, H-7
 - fire wall, 6-1
 - fix antenna
 - lock, 2-6, 8-15
 - fixed heading, 6-5, 6-6
 - fixed TX gain, 6-18
 - flange thickness, 3-8
 - flatness, 3-8
 - flow chart
 - calibration, 6-15
- G**
- gain
 - fixed TX, 6-18
 - gateway setup, 6-36
 - Get command, D-31
 - Get commands, D-31
 - Gilat SkyEdge II
 - examples, D-30
 - Gilat SkyEdgeII
 - setup, D-28
 - GLONASS, 6-6

GNSS

- BeiDou, 6-6
- GLONASS, 6-6
- GPS, 6-6
- Manual, 6-6

GPS, 6-6

GPS receiver

- distance from antenna, 3-14

grounding, H-1

- ACU rack version, 3-24
- ADU, 3-21
- aluminum hulls, H-6
- antenna, H-2
- cable, H-8
- fiberglass hulls, H-7
- recommendations, H-2
- steel hulls, H-4
- terminal, H-2

gusset plates, 3-8

gyro compass

- heading input, 6-5

gyro input, 4-3

H

heading input

- dual-antenna mode, B-3
- external, 6-5
- fixed, 6-5
- gyro compass, 6-5
- NMEA, 4-4
- none, 6-5, 6-6, 6-13

help

- command line interface, E-2

helpdesk number, 8-1

- changing in web interface, 8-1

host name, 6-21, 6-34, 6-35, 6-39, 6-52

humidity in antenna, 3-15

I

iDirect iNFINITI

- setup, D-15

iDirect iNFINITI serial

- setup, D-13

import configuration, 6-45

inclined orbit

- search pattern for acquisition, 6-6

inclined orbit satellites, 6-14

Inmarsat G5

- examples, D-33
- setup, D-31

Inmarsat G5 driver, D-31

installation

- ACU rack version1, 3-23

Interfaces, 4-1

interference, 3-12

- FBB, 3-14
- from radar, 3-12
- L-band antenna, 3-14
- RF, H-12

IP address

- for web interface, 6-2, 6-11, 6-16, 8-5
- OpenAMIP modem, 6-28
- static, 6-36

J

Japan satellite, G-3

L

LAN

- cable type, 4-6
- connector, 4-6
- network setup, 6-34

LAN configuration

- default gateway, 6-36
- DHCP client, 6-36

LAN connector

- management, 4-6

LAN network

- configuration, 6-34

L-band

- interference, 3-14

LED

- ACU, 8-10

limit access to web interface, 6-44

Line up, 6-16

Linkway S2 setup, D-34

LNB

- configuration, A-8
- Co-pol or X-pol, 6-12
- data sheet, A-7

LNB LO stability, A-7

LO frequencies, 6-48, A-9, A-11

LO stability, A-7

load

- configuration, 6-45

locking pin, 2-6, 8-15

login

- administrator, web interface, 6-2

logon

- administrator, command line interface, E-1

M

- mail server
 - setup, 6-37
- management PC
 - connect, 4-6
- mast
 - 2 braces, 3-11
 - 3 braces, 3-11
 - design, 3-7
 - flange thickness, 3-8
 - flatness, 3-8
 - foundation, 3-7
 - gusset plates, 3-8
 - height, 3-7
 - steel type, 3-7
 - without braces, 3-10
- mast flange, 3-8
- mast for antenna, 3-7
- mast length, 3-10
- master
 - active, dual antenna, B-5
- Master ACU
 - dual antenna, B-6
- messages, I-1
 - sent from VMU, OpenAMIP, D-5
- MIB, 6-54
- MIB file
 - download, 6-54
- microwave radiation, -iii
- minimum elevation angle, 6-30
- Model numbers, 2-10
- modem
 - command line interface, E-5
 - signal level, ACU display, 6-51
 - supported types, 6-27
- modem control
 - connector, 4-6
- modem option file
 - Serial, D-14
- modify XIM data, 6-45
- motion centre
 - ship, 3-7

N

- navigation, 6-20
- navigation in web interface, 6-21
- network
 - LAN setup, 6-34
- NID
 - calibration, 6-12

NMEA

- cable requirements, 4-3
 - connector, 4-3
 - LEN, 4-3
 - supported string, 4-4
- NMEA 0183
- baud rate, 4-3
- none
- heading input, 6-5, 6-6, 6-13
- notifications, 8-3
- NSS6 satellite, G-1

O

- obstructions
 - distance and size, 3-4
- OpenAMIP
 - setup, D-3
 - supported commands, D-5
- OpenAMIP IP modem
 - IP address, 6-28
- opening antenna, 3-20
- options
 - order number, 2-10
- options file, D-6
- order number
 - options, 2-10
- order numbers, 2-10
- Osaka, Japan satellite, G-3
- outline drawing
 - ACU rack version, A-6
 - ADU, A-5
- output power
 - TX, BUC, 6-25

P

- PAST, 8-10
- patents, A-4
- performance
 - optimization, blockage, D-1
- permissions
 - user, 6-45
- Person Activated Self Test, 8-10
- placing the antenna, 3-3
- polarisation skew, 6-10
- pole mount, 3-7
- position
 - GNSS, 6-6
 - manual enter, 6-6
- POST, 8-10

- power
 - BUC, 6-18
- Power On Self Test, 8-10
- protect access to settings, 6-44
- Proxy server, disabling, 6-22

R

- radar
 - distance from antenna, 3-12
 - signal degradation, 3-13
- radiation, -iii
- radiation level, 3-6
- radome
 - cleaning, 3-15
- recover
 - software update, 8-7
- reference signal, 10 MHz, 6-28
- remote access
 - dual mode, B-2
- report
 - diagnostics, 6-38
 - generate, 6-38
 - send by e-mail, 6-37
 - SNMP traps, 6-38
 - statistics, 6-38
 - syslog, 6-38
- reset, 6-53, 8-4
 - factory default, 6-46
- reset keys on ACU, 6-53
- RF interference
 - recommendations, H-12
- RF loss
 - ADU cable, maximum, 3-19
- roll period
 - limitations, 3-7
 - mounting height, 3-7
 - ship, 3-7
- rollback
 - software upload, 8-6
- ROSS box, D-16
- RS-232
 - connector, 4-5
- RS-422
 - connector, 4-5
- Rx-Tx
 - connector, 4-2, 4-3

S

- safe mode, 8-7
- safety summary, -iii

- samples
 - statistics, 6-38, 6-39
- sampling interval, 6-38, 6-39
- satellite
 - Apstar, G-3
 - Astra2, G-2
 - Australia, G-2
 - China, G-2
 - command line interface, E-5
 - NSS6, G-1
 - Osaka, Japan, G-3
 - SatMex6, G-1
 - Singapore, G-2
 - Telstar 10, G-3
 - Thaicom 5, G-2
 - Thor 5 T2, G-1
- satellite data, G-1, G-3
 - calibration, 6-10, 6-12, 6-30
- SatMex6 satellite, G-1
- save
 - configuration, 6-45
- self test, 2-8
- send e-mail
 - diagnostic report, 6-38
- Serial
 - examples, D-15
 - setup, D-13
 - supported commands, D-14
- server setup
 - SMTP, 6-37
- service
 - cable calibration, 6-13
- service profile
 - calibration, 6-11
- Set commands, D-31
- setup
 - diagnostic report, 6-38
 - e-mail, 6-37
 - for statistics report, 6-37
 - statistics report, 6-39
 - user permissions, 6-44
- shadowing, 3-4
- ship motion centre, 3-7
- signal level
 - modem, ACU display, 6-51
- Singapore satellite, G-2
- single antenna
 - force out of dual mode, B-9
- site map, 6-19
- SkyEdge II, D-28

- slave
 - active, dual antenna, B-5
 - Slave ACU
 - dual antenna, B-6
 - smoke deposits, 3-15
 - SMTP
 - server, 6-37
 - SMTP login, 6-37
 - SNMP, 6-54
 - community string, 6-54
 - SNMP traps
 - setup, 6-42
 - software update, 8-5
 - automatic rollback, 8-6
 - recover, 8-7
 - web interface, 8-5
 - software version, 1-1, 6-19
 - verify, 8-8
 - specifications, A-1
 - BUC, A-9, A-11
 - cable Comtech VSAT modem, C-2
 - cable iDirect VSAT modem, C-3
 - LNB, A-7
 - spreadsheet
 - statistics report, 6-41
 - SSH port, E-1
 - static IP, 6-1
 - static IP address, 6-36
 - statistics
 - sampling frequency, 6-38, 6-39
 - send by e-mail, 6-37
 - statistics report, 6-38, 6-39, 6-40
 - example, 6-41
 - import into spreadsheet application, 6-41
 - setup, 6-38
 - status
 - command line interface, E-8
 - status messages, 8-10
 - steel hulls
 - grounding, H-4
 - steel type
 - mast, 3-7
 - STM Satlink 2900
 - examples, D-27
 - STM Satlink 2900 VSAT modem
 - setup, D-24, D-28
 - support
 - contact information, 8-1
 - symbol rate
 - DVB, azimuth calibration, 6-12
 - syslog
 - setup, 6-42
 - system
 - ACU reset, keys to press, 6-53
 - command line interface, E-8
 - system configuration
 - copy, 6-45
 - System messages, I-1
- ## T
- technical data, A-1
 - Telnet, E-1
 - Telstar 10, G-3
 - terminal
 - grounding recommendations, H-2
 - Thaicom 5, G-2
 - Thor 5 T2 satellite, G-1
 - TNC connector, 4-2
 - tools needed, 3-2
 - track
 - command line interface, E-9
 - tracking mode
 - verification, 8-17
 - troubleshooting
 - diagnostic report, 8-1
 - TT number, 2-10
 - TX gain
 - fixed, 6-18
 - TX output power, 6-25
- ## U
- updating software, 8-5
 - upload
 - configuration, 6-45
 - user CLI, E-1
 - user permissions, 6-45
 - setup, 6-44
 - UTC time
 - events, 6-21
- ## V
- verification
 - tracking mode, 8-17
 - VMU connector, 4-2, 4-3

- VSAT modem
 - COMTECH 570L, D-16
 - Gilat SkyEdge II, D-28
 - iDirect iNFINITI, D-13
 - iDirect INFINITI (OpenAMIP), D-3
 - Linkway S2, D-34
 - STM Satlink 2900, D-24, D-28
 - supported types, 6-27
- VSAT modem option file
 - OpenAMIP, D-6
 - Serial, D-14
- VSAT restrictions, -v

W

- warning messages, I-1
- warnings, 8-3
- warranty, 8-18
- web interface
 - browser settings, 6-22
 - connect, 6-1
 - LAN connector, 4-6
 - navigating, 6-21
 - software update, 8-5
- web mmi
 - LAN connector, 4-6
- Wiring, 4-1

X

- XIM, 8-17
- XIM data
 - modify, 6-45

Z

- Zeroconf, 6-37
- zone
 - command line interface, E-10

